

DUBLIN	WILLIAM MCGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET
EDINBURGH	T G STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET
GLASGOW	OGLE & CO, 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE
BERLIN	ASHER & CO, UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11
BOSTON, U S	DUTTON & CO
NEW YORK	C SCRIBNER & CO, LEYPOLDT & HOLT
PHILADELPHIA	J B LIPPINCOTT & CO

Lancelot of the Death



A SCOTTISH METRICAL ROMANCE,

(ABOUT 1490-1500 A.D.)

RE-EDITED

FROM A MANUSCRIPT IN THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY,

WITH AN

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIAL INDEX,

BY

THE REV W. W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND TRANSLATOR OF THE SONGS AND
BALLADS OF UPLAND

[Second and Revised Edition, 1870]

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N TRUBNER & CO, 60, PATERNOSTER ROW

MDCCCLXX

P R E F A C E.

I —DESCRIPTION OF THE MS , ETC

A FORMER edition of the present poem was printed for the Martland Club, in 1839, and edited by Joseph Stevenson, Esq. It has saved me all trouble of transcription, but by no means, I am sorry to say, that of correction. Those who possess the older edition will readily perceive that it differs from the present one very frequently indeed, and that the variations are often such as considerably to affect the sense. Many of the errors in it (such as *casualtyee* for *casualytee*, *gone*, for *gone*, *repent* for *repent*) are clearly typographical, but there are others which would incline me to believe that the transcription was too hastily executed, several passages being quite meaningless. Near the conclusion of Mr Stevenson's preface we read "The pieces which have been selected for the present volume¹ are printed with such errors of transcription as have crept into them by the carelessness of the scribe," a statement which certainly implies that there was no intention on his part of departing from the original. Yet that he sometimes unconsciously did so to such an extent as considerably to alter (or destroy) the sense, the reader may readily judge from a few examples —

¹ The volume contains other poems besides "Sir Lancelot."

LINE	EDITION OF 1539	TRUE READING OF THE MS
26	fatil (<i>fatal</i>),	fatit (<i>fatal</i>)
285	unarmyt (<i>unarmed</i>),	enarmyt (<i>fully armed</i>)
682	can here,	cam nere
700	rendit (<i>rent</i>),	wondit (<i>wounded</i>)
764	refuse (<i>refusal</i>),	re p refuse (<i>defeat</i>)
861	felith (<i>feebleth</i>),	fitith (<i>setteth</i>)
1054	vyt,	rvcht
1084	spenis,	spuris
1455	cunynge (<i>coming</i>),	cunynge (<i>shall</i>)
1621	he war,	he war (<i>be ware</i>)
1641	promys,	punys (<i>punish</i>)
2010	ane desyne,	medysyne
2092	born,	lorn (<i>lost</i>)
2114	havin,	harnu
2142	Hymene ('),	hyme (<i>him</i>)
2219	such,	furth (<i>forth</i>)
2245	al so y vroght,	al foly vroght.
2279	chichingis ('),	thuthingis (<i>tidings</i>)
2446	love,	lore (<i>teaching</i>) Etc

Several omissions also occur, as, e.g., of the word "off" in l 7, of the word "tressore" in l 1715, and of four whole lines at a time in two instances, viz., lines 1191-4, and 2877-80. It will be found, in fact, that the former text can seldom be safely quoted for the purposes of philology, and I cannot but think Mr Stevenson's claim of being accurate to be especially unfortunate, and the more so, because the genuine text is much simpler and more intelligible than the one which he has given.

The original MS is to be found in the Cambridge University Library, marked Kk 1 5. It formerly formed part of a thick volume, labelled "Tracts," but these are now being separated, for greater convenience, into several volumes. The MS of "Lancelot" has little to do with any of the rest as regards its subject, but several other pieces are in the same hand-writing, and, at the end of one of them, an

abstract of Solomon's proverbs, occur the words, "Explicauit Dicta Salamonis, per manum V de F"¹ This hand-writing, though close, is very regular, and my own impression certainly is that the scribe has almost always succeeded in preserving the sense of the poem, though there is much confusion in the dialectal forms, as will be shewn presently

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS as can be represented by printed letters, every peculiarity being preserved as far as practicable, even including the use of *y* for *p* (or *th*), so that the reader must remember that *yow* in l 94 stands for *thow*, and *yus* in l 160 for *this*, and so on, but this ought not to cause much difficulty The sole points of difference are the following

1 In the MS the headings "Prologue," "Book I " etc , do not occur

2 The lines do not always begin (in the MS) with a capital letter

3 The letters *italicised* are (in the MS) represented by signs of contraction One source of difficulty is the flourish over a word, used *sometimes* as a contraction for *m* or *n* I have expanded this flourish as an *m* or *n* wherever such letter is manifestly required , but it also occurs where it is best to attach to it no value In such instances, the flourish occurs most frequently over the last word in a line, and (except very rarely) only over words which have an *m* or *n* in them It would thus seem that their presence is due to the fact of the scribe wanting employment for his pen after the line had been written, and that the flourish therefore appears over certain words, not so much because the *n* is *wanting* in them, as because it is *there already* Such words have a special attraction for the wandering pen Still, in order that the reader

¹ See Mr Lumby's editions of "Early Scottish Verse" and "Ratis Raving," both edited for the E E T S from this MS Only the latter of these is in the hand writing of V de F

may know wherever such flourishes occur, they have all been noted down, thus, in l 46, the stroke over the *n* in "*gren*" means that a long flourish occurs drawn over the whole word, and the reader who wishes to expand this word into "*grene*" or "*grenn*" may easily do it for himself, though he should observe that the most usual form of the word is simply "*gren*," as in lines 1000, 1305

In a few nouns ending in *-l*, the plural is indicated by a stroke drawn through the doubled letter, as in *perillz*, *sadillz*, etc., and even the word *ellis* (else) is thus abbreviated

4 I am responsible for all hyphens, and letters and words between square brackets, thus, "with-uten" is in the MS "with outen," and "knych[t]ly" is written "knychly" Whenever a line begins with a capital letter included between two brackets, the original has a blank space left, evidently intended for an illuminated letter Wherever illuminated letters actually occur in the MS, they are denoted in this edition by large capitals

5 We find, in the MS, both the long and the twisted *s* (*f* and *s*) These have been noted down as they occur, though I do not observe any law for their use The letter "*ſ*" has been adopted as closely resembling a symbol in the MS, which apparently has the force of double *s*, and is not unlike the "*sz*" used in modern German hand-writing It may be conveniently denoted by *ss* when the type "*ſ*" is not to be had, and is sometimes so represented in the "Notes"

6 The MS is, of course, not punctuated The punctuation in the present edition is mostly new, and many passages, which in the former edition were meaningless, have thus been rendered easily intelligible I am also responsible for the headings of the pages, the abstract at the sides of them, the numbering of the folios in the margin, the notes, and the glossary, which I hope may be found useful The greatest

care has been taken to make the text accurate, the proof-sheets having been compared with the MS *three times* throughout¹

II—DESCRIPTION OF THE POEM

The poem itself is a loose paraphrase of not quite fourteen folios of the first of the three volumes of the French Romance of Lancelot du Lac, if we refer to it as reprinted at Paris in 1513, in three volumes, thin folio, double-columned² The English poet has set aside the French Prologue, and written a new one of his own, and has afterwards translated and amplified that portion of the Romance which narrates the invasion of Arthur's territory by "le roy de oultre les marches, nomme galehault" (in the English *Gahot*), and the defeat of the said king by Arthur and his allies

The Prologue (lines 1-334) tells how the author undertook to write a romance to please his lady-love, and how, after deciding to take as his subject the story of Lancelot as told in the French Romance, yet finding himself unequal to a close translation of the whole of it, he determined to give a para-

¹ This refers to the edition printed in 1865. In executing the present reprint, the proof sheets have been once more compared with the MS, and a very few insignificant errors have been thus detected and rectified.

² "As to the Romance of Sir Lancelot, our author [Gower], among others on the subject, refers to a volume of which he was the hero, perhaps that of Robert de Borron, altered soon afterwards by Godefroy de Leigny, under the title of *Le Roman de la Charrette*, and printed, with additions, at Paris by Antony Verard, in the year 1494.

For if thou wilt the bokes rede
Of Launcelot and other mo,
Then might thou seen how it was tho
Of armes," etc. (GOWER *Confessio Amantis*, Book iv)

Quoted from Warton's English Poetry, vol. II, p. 234, ed. 1840. I quote this as bearing somewhat on the subject, though it should be observed that *Le Roman de la Charrette* is not the same with *Lancelot du Lac*, but only a romance of the same class. Chaucer also refers to Lancelot in his Nonnes Priestes Tale, l. 392, and it is mentioned in the famous lines of Dante (*Inf.* v. 127)—

"Noi leggevamo un giorno per diletto
Di Lancilotto, come amoi lo strinse," &c.

phrase of a portion of it only After giving us a brief summary of the earlier part by the simple process of telling us what he will *not* relate, he proposes to begin the story at the point where Lancelot has been made prisoner by the lady of Melyhalt, and to take as his subject the wars between Arthur and Galiot, and the distinction which Lancelot won in them, and afterwards to tell how Lancelot made peace between these two kings, and was consequently rewarded by Venus, who

“makith hyme his ladice grace to have” (l 311)

The latter part of the poem, it may be observed, has not come down to us The author then concludes his Prologue by beseeching to have the support of a very celebrated poet, whose name he will not mention, but will only say that

“Ye fresch enditing of his laiting tounge
Out throuch yis world so wid is yroung,” etc¹ (l 328)

The first Book introduces us to King Arthur at Carlisle² The king is visited by dreams, which he imagines to forebode misfortune, he therefore convokes all his clerks, and inquires of them the meaning of the dreams, proposing to hang them in the event of their refusal Thus strongly urged, they tell him that those on whom he most relies will fail him at his need, and when he further inquires if this evil fate can be averted, they answer him very obscurely that it can only be remedied by help of the water-lion, the leech, and the flower, a reply which the king evidently regards as unsatisfactory Soon after an aged knight, fully armed, enters the palace, with a message from King Galiot, requiring him to give “tribute and rent” Arthur at once refuses, somewhat to the astonishment of the knight, who is amazed at his hardihood Next arrives a message from the lady of Melyhalt, informing Arthur of the

¹ He does not necessarily imply that the poet invoked was still alive, and we might almost suppose Petrarch to be meant, who was more proud of his Latin poem called “Africa” than of his odes and sonnets. See Hallam’s Literary History (4 vols), vol 1, p 86 But this is pure conjecture

² But the French has “Cardueil” See l 2153



actual presence of Galiot's army. We are then momentarily introduced to Lancelot, who is pining miserably in the lady's custody. Next follows a description of Galiot's army, at sight of the approach of which King Arthur and his "niece," Sir Gawain, confer as to the best means of resistance. In the ensuing battle Sir Gawain greatly distinguishes himself, but is at last severely wounded. Sir Lancelot, coming to hear of Sir Gawain's deeds, craves leave of the lady to be allowed to take part in the next conflict, who grants him his boon on condition that he promise to return to his prison. She then provides for him a red courser, and a complete suit of red armour, in which guise he appears at the second battle, and is the "head and comfort of the field," the queen and Sir Gawain beholding his exploits from a tower. The result of the battle convinces Galiot that Arthur is not strong enough at present to resist him sufficiently, and that he thus runs the risk of a too easy, and therefore dishonourable, conquest, for which excellent reason he grants Arthur a twelvemonth's truce, with a promise to return again in increased force at the expiration of that period. Sir Lancelot returns to Melyhalt according to promise, and the lady is well pleased at hearing the reports of his famous deeds, and visits him when asleep, out of curiosity to observe his appearance after the fight.

In the Second Book the story makes but little progress, nearly the whole of it being occupied by a long lecture or sermon delivered to Arthur by a "master," named Amytans, on the duties of a king, the chief one being that a king should give presents to everybody—a duty which is insisted on with laborious tediousness. Lines 1320-2130 are almost entirely occupied with this subject, and will be found to be the driest part of the whole narrative. In the course of his lecture, Amytans explains at great length the obscure prophecy mentioned above, shewing that by the water-lion is meant God the Father, by the leech God the Son, and by the flower the Virgin

May Though the outline of a similar lecture exists in the old French text, there would seem to be a special reason for the length to which it is here expanded. Some lines certainly seem to hint at events passing in Scotland at the time when the poem was composed. Thus, "kings may be excused when of tender age" (l. 1658), but when they come to years of discretion should punish those that have wrested the law. Again we find (l. 1920) strong warnings against flatterers, concluding (l. 1940) with the expression,

"Wo to the realme that haviþ such o chuns!"

Such hints may remind us of the long minorities of James II and James III, and, whilst speaking on this subject, I may note a somewhat remarkable coincidence. When King Arthur, as related in Book I, asks the meaning of his dream, he is told that it signifies that "they in whom he most trusts will fail him" (l. 499), and he afterwards laments (l. 1151) how his "men fail him at need". Now when we read that a story is current of a prophetess having told James III that he was destined to "fall by the hands of his own kindred,"¹ and that that monarch was in the habit of consulting *astrologers*² (compare l. 432) as to the dangers that threatened him, it seems quite possible that the poem was really composed about the year 1478; and this supposition is consistent with the fact that the hand-writing of the present MS. copy belongs to the very end of the fifteenth century.

Towards the end of the Second Book, we learn that the twelvemonth's truce draws near its end, and that Sir Lancelot again obtains permission from the lady to be present in the approaching combat, choosing this time to be arrayed in "armys al of blak" (l. 2426).

¹ Tytler's History of Scotland (Edinburgh, 1841), vol. iv, p. 216.

² The French text does not say anything about "astronomy". We may especially note the following lines, as *not* being in the French, viz., lines 1478, 1496, 1523-1542, 1599-1644, 1658-1680, and the long passage 1752-1998.

In the Third Book Gaiot returns to the fight with a host thrice as large as his former one. As before, Gawain distinguishes himself in the first encounter, but is at length so "evil wounded" that he was "the worse thereof evermore" (l. 2706). In the second combat, the black knight utterly eclipses the red knight, and the last thousand (extant) lines of the poem are almost wholly occupied with a description of his wonderful prowess. At the point where the extant portion of the poem ceases, the author would appear to be just warming with his subject, and to be preparing for greater efforts.

In continuance of the outline of the story, I may add that the French text¹ informs us how, after being several times remounted by Gaiot, and finding himself with every fresh horse quite as fresh as he was at the beginning of the battle, the black knight attempted, as evening fell, to make his way back to Melyhalt secretly. Gaiot, however, having determined not to lose sight of him, follows and confronts him, and earnestly requests his company to supper, and that he will lodge in his tent that night. After a little hesitation, Lancelot accepts the invitation, and Gaiot entertains him with the utmost respect and flattery, providing for him a most excellent supper and a bed larger than any of the rest. Lancelot, though naturally somewhat wearied, passes a rather restless night, and talks a good deal in his sleep. Next day Gaiot prays him to stay longer, and he consents on condition that a boon may be granted him, which is immediately acceded to without further question. He then requests Gaiot to submit himself to Arthur, and to confess himself vanquished, a demand which so amazes that chieftain that he at first refuses, yet succeeds in persuading Lancelot to remain with him a little longer. The day after, preparations are made for another battle, on which occasion Lancelot wears Gaiot's armour, and is at first mistaken for him, till Sir Gawain's acute vision detects that the armour

¹ See Appendix

written in the Lowland Scottish dialect (the whole tone of the poem going to prove this), as shewn by the use of *ch* for *gh*, as in *bricht* for *bright*, (unless this be wholly due to the scribe), by the occurrence of plurals in *-is*, of verbal preterites and passive participles in *-it*, and of words peculiarly Scottish, such as *syne* (afterwards), *aneily* (only), *lawf* (remainder), *oft-syss* (oft-times), etc. Moreover, the Northern *i* is clearly indicated by the occurrence of such dissyllables as *gai-t*, 2777, *law-g*, 2845, *fir-st*, 2958, 3075, with which compare the significant spellings *harimful*, 1945, and *fuirde*, 2583. But, on the other hand, it would appear as if either the author or the copyist had no great regard for pure dialect, and continually introduces Southern and Midland forms, mixing them together in an indiscriminate and very unusual manner. We find, for example, in line 1765,

“Beith larg and iffis fiedy of thi thing,”

the Scottish form *iffis* (give) and the Southern *beith* in close conjunction, and we find no less than six or seven forms of the plural of the past tense of the verb “to be,” as, for example, *war* (3136), *weu* (818), *wane* (825), *waren* (3301), *veryng* (2971), *waryng* (443), etc. If we could suppose that the scribe was not himself a Scotchman, we might in some measure account for such a result, but the supposition is altogether untenable, as the peculiar character of the hand-writing (resembling that found, not in English, but in French MSS) decides it to be certainly Scottish, as is also evident from the occurrence, in the same hand-writing, of a Scotticised version of Chaucer’s “Flee from the press”

The best that can be done is to collect a few instances of peculiarities

1 The broad Northumbrian forms *a*, *ane*, *barth*, *fi a*, *ga*, *hauil*, *hame*, *knaw*, *law*, *sa*, *wat*, although occasionally retained, are also at times changed into *o*, *one*, *bouth*, *fi o*, *go*, *holl*, *hom*, *know*,

low, so, and *uot* Thus, at the end of l 3246, we find *hauſt*, which could not have been altered without destroying the rime, but in l 3078, we find it changed, in the middle of the line, into *holl* In l 3406, we find *sa*, but only three lines further on we find *so* twice

So, too, we not only find *tane* (taken), *gaus* (goes), but also the forms *tone* and *goß* See lines 1071, 1073

2 The true plural form of the verb is shewn by lines 203, 204,
 "Of quhois fame and worschipful dedis
 Clerkis into diuerß bukis *redis*,"

where alteration would have ruined the rime utterly, and the same termination (*-is*) is correctly used in the imperative mood, as, ——"fo *griffis* ws delay" (l 463),

"And of thi wordis *beis* trew and stable" (l 1671),

but the termination *-ith* is continually finding its way into the poem, even as early as in the fourth line,

"*Uprisith* arly in his fyre chare,"

and in the imperative mood also, as,

"*Remembriith* now it stondith one the poynt" (l 797)

The most singular point of all, however, is this—that, not content with changing *-is* into *-ith* in the 3rd person singular, the scribe has done the same even in the 2nd person, thus producing words which belong to no pure example of any distinct dialect Observe the following lines —

"O woful wrech, that *levis* in to were !
 To schew the thus the god of loue me sent,
 That of thi seruice no thing is content,
 For in his court yhoue [= thou] *leuith* in disspar,
 And vilfully *sustenis* al thi care,
 And *schapith* no thinge of thine awn remede,
 Bot *clepith* ay and *cryth* apone dede," etc (ll 84 90)

Here *levis* is altered into *leuith*, not only unnecessarily, but quite wrongly For similar mistakes, see ll 1019, 1369, 1384,

2203 For examples of correct usage, see ll 1024, 1337, 1796, 2200, 2201

3 But the terminations which are used in the most confused manner of all are *-en*, *-yne*, and *-ing* or *-yng*. Thus we find the non-Scottish infinitives, *telen* (494), *makine* (191), the constant substitution of *-ing* for *-and* in the present participle,¹ a confusion between the past participial ending *-ine* (more correctly *-yn*), and the present ending *-and*, thus producing such forms as *thimkine* (34), and *besichyne* (418), and also a confusion between *-ing* and the past participial ending *-en*, as *fundyng* for *funden* (465), *falling* for *fallen* (1217, 1322, 3267), *swellyng* for *swollen* (1222), and *halding* for *halden* (2259). We even find *-ing* in the infinitive mood, as in *auysing* (424), *viting* (to know, 410), *smytung* (1326), *warnnyng* (1035), *passing* (2148), *scheuing* (2736), etc., and, lastly, it occurs in the plural of the indicative present, instead of the Midland *-en*, as in *passing* (1166), *biding* (2670), and *leiyng* (3304).²

It may safely be concluded, however, that the frequent occurrence of non-Scottish infinitives must not be attributed to the copyist, since they are probably due rather to the author, for in such a line as

"Of his desir to viting the sentens" (l 410),

the termination *-ing* is required to complete the rhythm of the line

In the same way we must account for the presence of the prefix *v-*, as in the line

"Quharwith that al the gardinge was I clede" (l 50)

¹ We find the true forms occasionally, as *obersand* (641), *plesand* (1731), *thunkand* (2173), *prekand* (3089), and *fechtand* (3127). Compare the form *servand* (122).

² "The Scottish pronunciation of *ing* was already, as it still is, *een*, and the writer, knowing that the correct spelling of *dwelhn*, for example, was *dwelthng*, fancied also that *fallen*, *halden* (Sc *fallyn*, *haldyn*) were *falling*, *haldyng*. Lyndesay and Gawain Douglas often do the same. Compare *gardinge* (l 50), *larting* (l 327)." — J. A. H. Murray

This prefix never occurs in vernacular Scottish, but we may readily suppose that this and other numerous Southern forms of words are due (as in Gawain Douglas and Lyndesay) to the author's familiarity with Chaucer's poems, as evinced by the similarity of the rhythm to Chaucer's, and by the close resemblance of several passages. Compare, for instance, the first seventy lines of the Prologue with the opening passages of "The Flower and the Leaf," and "The Complaint of the Black Knight," and see notes to ll 432, 1608. Indeed, this seems to be the only satisfactory way of accounting for the various peculiarities with which the poem abounds.

Mr J A H Murray, in his remarks printed in the preface to Mr Lumby's edition of "Early Scottish Verse," comes to a similar conclusion, and I here quote his words for the reader's convenience and information. "There is no reason, however, to suspect the scribe of *wilfully* altering his original, indeed, the reverse appears manifest, from the fact that the 'Craft of Deyng' has not been assimilated in orthography to 'Ratis Raving,' but distinctly retains its more archaic character, while in 'Sir Lancelot,' edited by Mr Skeat for the Early English Text Society, from the handwriting of the same scribe, we have a language in its continual Anglicisms quite distinct from that of the pieces contained in this volume, of which the Scotch is as pure and unmixed as that of the contemporary Acts of Parliament. With regard to the remarkable transformation which the dialect has undergone in Sir Lancelot, there seems reason, therefore, to suppose that it was not due to the copyist of the present MS, but to a previous writer, if not to the author himself, who perhaps affected *southernism*, as was done a century later by Lyndesay and Knox, and other adherents of the English party in the Reformation movement. The Southern forms are certainly often shown by the rhyme to be original, and such a form as *tone* for *tane* = taken, is more likely to have been that of a Northerner trying to write

Southern, than of a Southern scribe, who knew that no such word existed in his dialect. The same may be said of the *th* in the second person singular. A Scotch writer, who observed that Chaucer said *he lweth*, where he himself said *he lyres*, might be excused for supposing that he would also have said *thou lweth* for the Northern *thow lyres*, but we can hardly fancy a Southern copyist making the blunder.

4 We find not only the Northumbrian forms *sall* and *suld*, but also *shall*, *shalt*, and *shuld*.

5 As regards pronouns, we find the Scottish *scho* (she) in l 1169, but the usual form is *sche*. We find, too, not only the broad forms *thai*, *thau*, *thaim*, but also *thei* (sometimes *the*), *ther*, and *them*. As examples of forms of the relative pronoun, we may quote *uho*, *quho*, *uhois*, *quhois* (whose), *quhom*, *quhome* (whom), *quhat*, *qichat* (what), and *uulik*, *quulik*, *quuhk*, *quich*, *wich* (which). *Wich* is used instead of *who* (l 387), and we also find *the wich*, or *the wich that*, similarly employed. The nominative *who* does not perhaps occur as a simple relative, but has the force of *whoso*, or *he who*, as *e g*, in l 1102, or else it is used interrogatively, as in l 1172.

6 Many other peculiarities occur, which it were tedious to discuss fully. It may suffice, perhaps, to note briefly these following. We find both the soft sound *ch*, as in *wich*, *sich*, and the hard sound *h*, as in *whilk*, *rehe* (reach), *stieche* (stretch), etc., which are the true Northern forms.

Mo is used as well as *more*.

Tho occurs for *then* in l 3184, and for *the* in l 247.

At occurs as well as *that*, *atte* as well as *at the*, 627, 1055.

The short forms *ma* (make), *ta* (take), *sent* (sendeth), *stant* (standeth), are sometimes found, the two former being Northumbrian.

Has is used twice as a plural verb (ll 481, 496).¹

¹ "The plural in Scottish always ends in *s* after a noun or when the verb is separated from its pronoun, we still say *the men hes*, *the barns sings*, *them*



ȝha (yes) occurs in l 2843, but we also meet with *ȝhis*, or *ȝus*, with reference to which Mr Morris writes —“The latter term was not much in favour with the people of the North. Even now *yes* sounds offensive to a Lancashire man ‘Hoo cou’d naw opp’n hur meawth t’ sey *eygh* (yea) or *now* (no), boh simpurt on sed *iss*, th’ dickons *iss* hur on him too —*Tim Bobbin*’” In fact, the distinction between *ȝha* and *ȝhis*, which I have pointed out in *William of Palerne* (Glossary, s v *ȝis*), viz, that *ȝha* merely assents, whilst *ȝhis* shews that the speaker has an opinion of his own, is in this poem observed. Thus, in l 2843, *ȝha* = “yes, I admit that I do,” but in l 514, *ȝus* = “yes, but you had better do so,” in l 1397, *ȝhis* = “yes, indeed I will,” and in l 3406, *ȝis* = “yes, but I cannot accept your answer”¹ The true distinction between *thou* and *ye* (*William of Palerne*, Pief p xli) is also generally observed. Thus the Green Bird, in the Prologue, considers the poet to be a fool, and calls him *thou*, but the clerks, in addressing Arthur (l 498) politely say *ye*. And again, Amytans, when rebuking Arthur, frequently calls him *thou*, without any ceremony. Cf ll 659, 908, 921, 2839, &c

As regards the vocabulary, we find that some Northumbrian terms have been employed, but others thrown aside. Thus, while we find the Northumbrian words *thur* (these), *traust* (trust), *newis* (nerves, fists), *radour* (fear), etc, we do not, on the other hand, meet with the usual Scottish word *murk*, but observe it to be supplanted by *duik* (l 2471). So, again, *eke* is used in the sense of *also*, instead of being a verb, as more usual in Northern works. We may note, too, the occurrence of *frome* as well as *fra*, and the Scottish form *thyne-furth* (thenceforth) in l 2196.

¹at *cums*, not *have*, *sing*, *come*. Notice the frequent use of *th* for *t*, as in l 497, *Presumyth* = *presumit*, presumed, it being presumed.—J A H Murray [Or, *presumyth* may be the pl imperative, as in *Remembrith* (l 797), already noticed.—ED.]

¹ “Thus *ȝis* is the common form in the Scottish writers, though *ay* is largely the modern vernacular”—J A H Murray

The spelling is very various. We find even four forms of one word, as *cusynace*, *cusynece*, *cusynes*, *cusynes*, and, as examples of eccentric spelling, may be quoted *qsquyaris* (squires, l 3204), whilst in l 3221 we find *squar*.

Both in the marginal abstract and in the notes I have chiefly aimed at removing minor difficulties by explaining sentences of which the construction is peculiar, and words which are disguised by the spelling. For the explanation of more uncommon words, recourse should be had to the Glossarial Index.

APPENDIX.

EXTRACTS FROM THE FRENCH ROMANCE OF "LANCELOT DU LAC"

As it seems impossible to do justice to the story of Lancelot without giving due attention to the famous French Romance, and since a portion of the French text is really necessary to complete even that fragment of it which the Scottish author proposed to write, the following extracts have been made with the view of shewing (1) the general outline of the earlier part of the story, (2) the method in which the Scottish author has expanded or altered his original, and (3) the completion of the story of the wars between Arthur and Galiot¹

I Headings of the chapters of the French Romance, from its commencement to the end of the wars with Galiot

[The commas are inserted by the present editor, and the expansions marked by italics]

¶ Cy commence la table du premier volume de la table ronde lancelet du lac

¶ Comment apres la mort de vterpandragon roy du royaume de logres, & apres la mort aramon, roy de la petite bretagne, le roy claudas de la terre Descosse mena guerre contre le roy ban de benoic et le roy boort de gauues tant quil les desherita² de leurs terres Fueillet 1

Claudas king of
Scotland de
pirves king Ban
and king Boort
of their lands

¹ The extracts are from the Paris edition of 1513, 3 vols folio, a copy of which is in the King's Library in the British Museum. There are also two other editions in the Museum, one in the Grenville Library, 3 vols Paris, 1494, folio, the other in one folio volume, Paris, 1520 ² See li 1447 1449

Claudas besieges
Ban in the Castle
of Tribles

¶ Comment le roy claudas assiege le chasteau de
tribles auquel estoit le roy ban de benoie, et comment
ilz parlementrent ensemble f 1

King Ban, his
wife and his son
Lancelot repair
to the court of
Arthur

¶ Comment le roy ban de benoie, accompagne de
sa femme et de son filz lancelot, avecques vng seul
escuyer, se partient du chasteau de tribles pour aller
querir secours deuers le roy Artus a la grant bretagne
Fueillet 11

The Castle of
Tribles is treach-
erously given up
to Claudas

¶ Comment apres ce que le roy ban fut party de
son chasteau de tribles, le seneschal a qui il auoit baillie
la garde trahit ledit chasteau, et le liura es mains du
roy claudas Fueillet 11

King Ban dies of
grief and Lancelot
is taken away
by the lady of the
lake

¶ Comment le roy ban mourut de dueil quant il vint
son chasteau ardon et brouyr Et comment la dame du
lac emporta son filz lancelot¹ Fueillet 1111

¶ Comment la royne helune, apres que le roy fut
mort et elle eut perdu son filz, se iendit nonnain en
labbaye du monstier royal Fueillet v

The two sisters
widows of kings
Ban and Boort
retreat to a mon-
astery

¶ Comment le roy de gauues mourut & comment
la Royne sa femme, pour prier de claudas, sen partit
de son chasteau pour aller au monstier royal, ou sa seur
estoit rendue et comment ces enfans Lyonnell et Boort
luy furent ostez Fueillet vi

¶ Comment la royne de Gauues, apres que son
seigneur fut mort et que elle eut perdu ses deux enfans,
se vint rendre au monastere ou estoit sa seur la royne
de benoie Fueillet vi

Martin's love for
the lady of the
lake

¶ Comment martin fut engendre du dyable Et com-
ment il fut amoureux de la dame du lac Fueillet vii

Sir Fariens
creetly nourishes
the two sons of
king Boort, and
is made seneschal
to king Claudas

¶ Comment le cheualier farien, qui auoit tollu a la
royne de Gauues ses deux enfans, les emporta en sa
maison | et les feist nourrir vne espace de temps Et
comment le roy claudas fut amoureux de la femme du
dict Farien | et pource le fist son seneschal Fueillet viii

Claudas accuses
Sir Fariens of
treason

¶ Comment le roy claudas fist appeler son cheualier
farien de trahison par ladmonnestement de sa femme,
disant quil gardoit les deux enfans du roy boort de
gauues Fueillet viii

Claudas, in dis-
guise visits Ar-
thur's court

¶ comment le roy claudas en maniere de cheualier
estrange, se partit du royaume de gauues pour aller en
la grant bretagne a la court du roy artus pour veoir sa
puissance & son gouuernement Fueillet x

The lady of the
lake informs
Lancelot that he
is a king's son

¶ Comment la dame du lac bailla a lancelot vng
maistre pour linstruyre comme il appartenoit a filz de
roy Fueillet xii

¶ Comment la royne helaine alloit fane chascun iour

¹ Lines 215, 220

son dueil au lieu ou son seigneur mourut | et de la
allot au lac ou elle perdit son filz Fueillet xv

¶ Comment le bon Religieux qui auoit dit nouuelles
a la royne helaine de son filz lancelet, print conge de
elle, et sen vint au roy artus en la grant bretagne
Fueillet xvi

¶ Comment la dame du lac enuoya sa damoysselle a
la court du roy claudas, pour deliurer les deux enfans
au roy boort que claudas tenoit en prison Fueillet xvii

The lady of the
lake seeks to de-
liver the sons of
king Boort

¶ Comment farien, seneschal du roy claudas par le
commandement de son seigneur, alla querir en prison
les deux filz au roy de Gauues Fueillet xviii

¶ Comment les deux enfans au roy de gauues
blecerent le roy claudas, & occirent dorn son filz | et
comment la damoysselle du lac les emmena en semblance
de deux leumiers fueil xix

Lyonnell and
Boort wound
king Claudas
and slay his son
Dorn

¶ De la grant ioye et du grant honneur que la dame
du lac fist aux deux enfans quant elle les veit en sa
maison Fueillet xx

¶ Comment le roy claudas mena tres grant dueil
pour la mort de dorn son filz que boort auoit occis
Fueillet xx

Claudás bewails
his son's death

¶ Comment farien et le peuple de la cyte de gauues
sesmeurent contre le roy claudas a cause que il vouloit
faire mourir les deux filz au roy boort de gauues
Fueillet xxi

¶ Comment le roy claudas se partit de gauues | et
comment ceulx dudit lieu le vouloient occire, se neust
este farien le bon chevalier f xxiii

Farien saves
Claudás life

¶ Comment le roy claudas se deffendit vaillamment
contre ceulx de Gauues qui le vouloyent occire Fueil-
let xxv

¶ Comment lyonnell et boort perdirent le boire et le
manger pource quilz ne scauoyent nouuelles de leur
maistres | lesquelz estoyent demourez avec le roy claudas
| & comment la dame du lac enuoya vne sienne damoy-
sselle a gauues pour les amener Fueillet xxvii

¶ Comment, par le conseil des barons de gauues
leonce & lambegues sen allerent avecques la damoysselle
pour veoir leurs seigneurs lyonnalet boort Fueillet xxviii

Ieonce and Lam-
begues go to seek
Lyonnell and
Boort

¶ Comment la dame du lac sen retourna apres ce
quelle eut monstre a leonce et a lambegues les enfans du
roy de gauues leurs seigneurs, et comment lesditz che-
ualiers sen retournerent a gauues Fueillet xxx

¶ Comment le roy claudas retourna a gauues, pour
soy venger de la honte qu'on luy auoit faicte, et pour la
mort de son filz Fueil xxxi

Claudás medi-
tates revenge

	¶ Comment lippointement fut entre le roy claudas et les barons, pu le moyen de fuiren et lam begues son nepueu fueillet	xxxiii
Death of Farien	¶ Comment fuiren sa femme, et son nepueu lambegues son parturent pour aller voir lyonnél et booit, qui estoient au lac & comment fuiren mourut Fueillet	xxxv
The widow of king Boort sees her children and Lancelot in a vision and dies	¶ Comment les deux roynes menerent sincte vie au monstrei roy et comment celle de graues vert ces deux enfans & lancelet en rduision et comment elle tiespassa de ce siccle Fueillet	xxxv
Arthur holds a tournament, and Banin, son of king Ban, is the victor	¶ Comment le roy artus assembla le iour de pasques tous ses barons, & tint grant court a karahes, et comment banin le filleul au Roy ban emporta le pris du behourdys celluy iour Fueillet	xxxvi
The lady of the lake sends Lancelot to Arthur to be knighted, and provides for him white armour	¶ Comment la dame du lac se pourpensa de mener lancelet au roy artus pour le faire cheualier, ¹ et elle luy bulla armes blanches, et partit du lac a tout quarante cheualiers pour le conuoier Fueillet	xxxvii
Of the wounded knight who came to Arthur's court	¶ Comment vng cheualier naue, lequel auoit vne espee fichée en la teste et deux troncons de lance parmy le corps, ² vint a la court du roy artus et comment la dame du lac le mena deuant le roy artus, et luy prya quil le fist cheualier Fueillet	xxxix
Lancelot is knighted.	¶ Comment messire yvain, a qui le roy Artus auoit recommande lancelet, alla faire sa requeste audit roy artus, que le lendemain il fist ledit lancelet cheualier, et comment ledit lancelet defferra le cheualier naure ³ Fueillet	xli
How the white knight defended the lady of No-halt,	¶ Comment la dame de noehault ⁴ enuoya deuers le roy artus, luy supplier quil luy enuoyast secours contre le Roy de norhombellande qui luy menoit guerre Et comment Lancelot request au roy artus quil luy donnast congie dy aller & il luy octroya Fueillet	xlii
and won the battle for her	¶ Comment le nouveau cheualier aux armes blanches vainquit la bataille pour la dame de noehault Fueillet	xliii
How Lancelot conquered the Sorrowful Castle	¶ Comment lancelet apres ce quil se fut party de la dame de noehault, se combatit avec vng cheualier qui lauot mouille Fueillet	xlv.
How Arthur hears of it, and sends Gawain to see if it is true	¶ Comment lancelet conquist vaillamment par sa force et proesse le chastean de la douloureuse garde que nul aultre ne pouoit conquerre ⁵ Fueillet	xlv

¹ Line 228² Lines 237 245³ Lines 249 252⁴ Line 255⁵ Lines 257 259

aux armes blanches | Et le roy y enuoya messire gauvain
pour en scauoir la verite Fueillet xlviii

¶ Comment messire Gauvain fut mys en prison | et
comment le roy et la royne entrèrent en la premiere
porte de la | et la venent des tumbes ou il y auoit
escript que monseigneur gauvain estoit mort, et plu-
sieurs autres cheualiers Fueillet xlix

¶ Comment vne damoyselle de l'hostel de la dame
du lac feist assauoir au cheualier blanc que monseig-
neur gauvain & ses compaignons estoient emprisonnez
par celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse
garde Fueillet l

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier se combatit encontre
celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse garde,
qui tenoit en prison messire gauvain et ses compaignons¹
Fueillet l

¶ Comment le cheualier blanc emmena le cheualier
conquis en vng hermitage et comment ledit cheualier
conquis luy rendit audit hermitage gauvain & ses com-
paignons f lii

¶ Comment messire gauvain et ses compaignons sen-
vindrent par deuers le roy artus qui estoit a la dou-
loueuse garde Et comment le roy et la royne furent
ioyeux quant ilz les virent Fueillet liii

¶ Comment le cheualier blanc retourna a l'abbaye
ou il auoit laisse ses escuyers | et comment il sceut las-
semblee qui deuoit estre entre le roy artus et le roy
doltre les marches, & comment il conquist le cheualier
qui disoit mieulx aymer le cheualier qui auoit naure que
celluy qui lauoit este² Fueillet liiii

¶ Comment messire gauvain se mist en queste pour
trouuer le blanc cheualier³ Et comment la meslee
dentre les gens au roy des cent cheualiers et les gens de
la dame de noehault fut appaisee Fueillet lv

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier vainquit lassemblee
dentre les deux roys | et comment il fut naure du roy
des cent cheualiers Fueillet lvi

¶ Comment apres que le cheualier qui auoit gangne
le tournoyement dentre le roy doltre les marches sen-
fut alle, le roy artus & la royne geneure se partirent
pour aller en leurs pays Fueillet lvii

¶ Comment messire gauvain se combatit a brehai-
sans pitie, et le rua par terre et comment apres ilz sen
allerent a la douloureuse garde & comment les deux
pucelles que messire Gauvain menoit luy furent tollues
Fueillet lviii

¹ Lines 263, 4

² See ll 244, 5

³ Line 267

Gawain is imprisoned, and supposed to be dead

Lancelot hears of Gawain's imprisonment

and delivers him and his companions

Gawain returns to Arthur and his Queen at Douloreuse Garde

Lancelot hears of the war to come between Arthur and Gahot

Gawain goes to seek the white knight

who is wounded in the battle against Gahot by the king of a hundred knights

Arthur and Queen Geneure return home

Lancelot ends the adventures of the 'horrible' Castle	¶ Comment lancelet print congie de son mie et comment il mist a fin les adventures de la douloureuse garde Fueillet lx
Lancelot is again victorious in the combat between Arthur and Galiot	¶ Comment messire gauvain recouura les deux pucelles qui luy auoyent este tollues, Et comment lancelet vainquit la seconde assemblee dentie le roy artus & le roy doultre les marches Fueillet lxi
Gauvain returns to Arthur's court	¶ Comment messire gauvain retourna a la court du roy artus apres la seconde assemblee dentie le roy artus & le roy doultre les marches, et comment lancelet vainquit le cheualier qui gardoit le gue Fueillet lxii [Here begins the Scotch Translation]
Arthur's evil dreams	¶ Comment le roy Artus songea plusieurs songes et apres manda tous les sages clercs de son royaume pour en scauoir la signifi'ce ¹ Fueillet lxiii
Galiot defies Arthur	¶ Comment le roy doultre les marches, nomme gallehault, enuoya deffier le roy artus ² et comment lancelet occist deux geans empires kamalot ³ Fueillet lxv
Lancelot is assailed by forty knights, and imprisoned by the lady of Melihault	¶ Comment lancelet occist vng cheualier qui disoit moins aymer le cheualier nuire que celluy qui lauot naure ⁴ et comment il fut assully de xl cheualliers, et mys en prison de la dame de mallehault ⁵ Fueillet lxviii
Lancelot released from prison is again victorious against Galiot	¶ Comment gallehault assemble au roy artus vng iour d'uant que lancelet estoit en prison ⁶ et comment le lendemain lancelet fut deliure de prison ⁷ et vainquit lassemblee dentre les deux roys ⁸ Fueillet lxvii
Arthur is reproved by Amytins and Galiot proposes a truce for a year	¶ Comment le roy artus fut rep'ins de ses vices, et moult bien conseille par vng cheualier qui suruint en son ost ⁹ Et comment gallehault donna tresues au roy Artus iusques a vng an ¹⁰ Fueillet lxiix
Lancelot returns to the lady of Melihault	¶ Comment lancelet, apres ce quil eut vaincu lassemblee, retourna en la prison de la dame de mallehault ¹¹ et comment elle le congneut, a son cheual et par les playes quil auoit, que c'estoit celluy qui auoit vaincu lassemblee ¹² Fueillet lxxii
Gauvain with 99 comrades departs to seek the red knight	¶ Comment messire gauvain, soy quarantiesme de compaignons, se mist en queste pour trouuer le cheualier qui auoit porte lescu vermeil a lassemblee dentre le roy artus et Gallehault ¹³ Fueillet lxxiii
The lady of Melihault accepts Lancelot's ransom	¶ Comment la dame de mallehault mist a ranc' le cheualier quelle tenoit en prison, et le laissa aller quant elle veit quelle ne peult scauoir son nom ¹⁴ fu lxxiiii

¹ Lines 363-527

² Lines 540-592

³ Line 280

⁴ Lines 233-252

⁵ Lines 281-292

⁶ Lines 634-694

⁷ Lines 895-974

⁸ Lines 975-1138

⁹ Lines 1275-2180

¹⁰ Lines 1543-1584

¹¹ Lines 1139-1152

¹² Lines 1181-1274

¹³ Lines 2161-2256

¹⁴ Lines 2347-2442

¶ Comment messire gauvain et ses compaignons retournerent de leur queste¹ | et comment apres les treues failles galehault vint assembler contre le roy artus, & tous ses gens en furent moult troublez² fu lxxxiiii

The truce ended
Gaiot again at-
tacks Arthur

¶ Comment galehault suyuit le cheualier aux noires armes,³ & fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena en son ost, dont le roy artus et tous ses gens en furent moult troublez Fueillel lxxxviii

Gaiot gains over
the black kni^gt

¶ Comment lancelet par sa prouesse conquist tout, et fist tant que galehault crya mercy au roy artus fu lxxxix

Lancelot induces
Gaiot to submit
to Arthur

¶ Comment galehault fist tant que la royne vit lance- lot | & comment ilz se arraisonnerent ensemble fu lxxxix

The Queen and
Lancelot meet

¶ Comment la royne congneut lancelet apres ce quil eut longuement parle a elle, & quil luy eut compte de ses aduentures & comment la premiere acointance fut faicte entre la royne & lancelet par le moyen de galehault fu lxxxix

The Queen knows
Lancelot from his
adventures that
he tells her

¶ Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de galehault & de la dame de malehault par le moyen de la royne de logres, & comme[nt] lancelet & galehault sen alloyent esbatre & deuiser avecques leurs dames fu lxxxiiii

Gaiot becomes
acquainted with
the lady of Mely
halt

II The Chapter of the French romance from which the translator has taken the beginning of his First Book is here given, in order to shew in what manner he has treated his original It begins at Fol lxiij a, col 1

Comment le roy artus songea plusieurs songes, et apres manda tous les sages clerz de son royaume pour en scaoir la signifiante

Arthur's evil
dreams

OR dit le compte que le roy artus auoit longuement seourne a cardueil Et pource ny auenoit mie grandement de aduentures, il ennuya moult aux compaignons du Roy de ce quilz auoient si longuement seourne, & ne veoient riens de ce quilz souloyent veoir Principallement keu le seneschal en fut trop ennuye Et en parloit moult souuent, et disoyt deuant le roy que trop estoit ce seour ennuyeulx, & trop auoit dure Le roy luy demande "Keu | que voudriez vous que nous feissions?" "Certes," fait keu, "ie conselleroye que nous allissions a kamalot | car la cite est plus aduan-

King Arthur be-
ing at Cardueil,

his knights are
annoyed at meet-
ing with no ad-
ventures

Sir Kay counsels
that they should
go to Camelot

¹ Lines 2504 2530

² Lines 2531 3268

³ Lines 3343 3487

The king con-
sents to go,

but the same
night dreams
that all his hair
falls off which
delays him
The third night
after he dreams
that all his fin-
gers fall off ex-
cept his thumbs

Again that all
his toes fall off
except his great
toes

The Queen and
his chaplain dis-
regard the
dreams

but Arthur sends
for his bishops,
archbishops, and
their wisest
clerks,

whom he impi-
sons till they
shall tell him
what the dreams
mean

After trying for
nine days, they
fail

They twice ob-
tain a delay of
three days

The king threat-
ens to slay them

Five are to be
burnt and five
hung

tureuse que vous ayez | et la nous verrions souuent et
orrons choses de merueilles que nous ne voyons pas icy
Nous auons sejourne icy plus de deux moys, et
oncques ne y veismes gueres de choses aduenir " Or
alons donc," fait le roy, " a Kamalot, puis que vous le
conseillez " Lendemain deust partir le roy | mais la
nuyet luy aduint vne merueilleuse aduenture Il songa
que tous les cheueulx de sa teste cheoient, et tous les
poilz de sa barbe, dont il fut moult espouente Et par
ce demoura encoires en la ville La tierce nuyt apres il
songa que il luy estoit aduis que tous les dois luy
cheoient fors les poulces, & lois fut plus esbahy que
deuant

A Lautre nuyet songer il que tous les ortelz des
piedz luy cheoient fors les poulces de ce fut si
trouble que plus ne pult " Sire," fait son chappelain
a qui il lauoir dit, " ne vous chulle | car songes ne sont
pas a craindre," le roy le dit a la royne, et elle respond
tout ainsi que luy uoir fut son chappelain " En
verite," dist il, " ie ne l'ai-sei y pas la chose ainsi " | il
fait mander ses euesques et archeuesques quilz soient a
luy au ix iour ensuyuant a kamalot, & quilz amainent
auec eulx tous les plus sages clerks quilz pourroient
auoir et trouuer A tant se prit de carduel & sen va
par les chasteaulx et par les citez | tant que au neuf
mesme iour est venu a kamalot, et aussi sont venus les
clerks du pays Il leur demande conseil de son songe,
et ilz elisent dix des plus sages le roy les fist bien
enserrer, et dist que iamaiz nen sortiroient de prison
deuant quilz luy auroient dit la signifiante de son songe
Ilz espiouuerent la force de leur sciencce par neuf iours,
et puis vindrent au roy, & dirent quilz nauoient riens
trouue " Ainsi maist dieu," dit le roy, " ia ainsi
neschapperez " Et ils demandent respit iusques au
troisiesme iour ensuyuant, et il leur donne Les iii
iours passez, ilz reuenient deuant le roy, et dient que
ilz ne peuent riens trouuer | et demandent encoires autre
delay | et ilz ont Et de rechief vindient pour de-
mander aultres troys iours de dilacion, ainsi que le roy
auoir songe de tierce nuyt en tierce nuyt " Oi sachez,"
fait le roy, " que iamaiz plus nen aurez " Quant vint
au tiers iour ilz dirent quilz nauoient rien trouue, " ce
ne vault rien," fait le roy, " ie vous feray tous destruire
se vous ne me dictes la vente," et ils dirent " Sue
nous ne vous en scarions que dire " Lors se pense le
roy quil leur fera paour de mort Il fait fair vng grant
feu, & commanda en leurs presences que les v y fus-

sent mis, et que les autres cinq soyent penduz | mais
 prueement deffent a ses baillifz quilz ne les menassent
 que iusques a la paour de mourir. Quant les cinq qui
 furent menez aux fourches eurent les cordes entour
 leurs colz, ils eurent paour de mourir, et dirent, que se
 les autres cinq le vouloyent dire, ilz le diroyent. La
 nouvelle vint au v que len menoit ardre | et ilz dirent
 que, se les autres le vouloyent dire, ils le diroyent | ils
 furent amenez ensemble deuant le roy, et les plus sages
 dirent | "sire, nous vous dirons ce que nous auons
 trouue | mais nous ne voudrions mie que vous nous
 tenissiez a menteurs se il ne aduenoit | car nous voud
 rions bien quil nen fust rien, et voulons, comment quil
 en aduengne, que vous nous assurez que la mal ne
 nous en aduendra," et il leur promet. Lors dist lung
 de eulx qui pour tous parla "Sire, sachez que ceste
 terre et tout honneur vous conuendra perdre et ceulx
 en qui plus vous fiez vous fauldront, telle est la sub
 stance et signifiante de voz songes." De ceste chose fut
 le roy moult effraye, "Or me dictes," fait il, "sil est
 chose qui men peult garantir." "Certes," fait le
 maistre, nous auons veu une chose | Mais cest si grande
 merueille que on ne le pourroyt penser, et ne la vous
 osons dire." "Dictes," fait il, "seurement | car pis ne
 me puez vous dire que vous mauez dit." "Sire, riens
 ne vous peult garder de perdre tout honneur terrien fors
 le lyon sauluaige, et le mire sans medecine, par le con
 seil de la fleur, & se nous semble estre si grande folie
 que nous ne losions dire | Car lyon sauluaige ne y peult
 estre, ne mire sans medecine | ne fleur qui parlast." le
 roy est moult entrepris de ceste chose mais plus en
 fait belle chiere que le cuer ne luy apporte. Ung iour
 alla le roy chasser au boys bien matin | et mena avec
 luy messire gauvain, keu le seneschal, et ceulx qui lui
 pleust. Si laisse icy le compte a parler de luy, et
 retourne a parler du cheualier dont messire Gauvain
 aporta le nom en court.

The five who are
 to be hung hav
 ing the cords
 round their necks
 offer to speak out

They stipulate
 not to be held as
 liars if their inter
 pretations fail

The dreams mean
 that he will lose
 his land and his
 honour

Arthur as if
 anything can
 avert such fate

He is told, "no
 thing except the
 savage lion and
 the leech without
 medicine by help
 of the counsel of
 the flower

Arthur goes to
 the chase

Lancelot on his
 wanderings

Quant¹ le cheualier qui lassemblee auoyt vaincu
 se partast de la ou il se combatist a son hoste,
 il erra toute iour sans autre aduanture trouuer. Il se
 logea la nuyt chiez une veufue dame a lyssue dune
 forest a cinq lieues angleches pres de kamelot. Le
 cheualier se leua matin, et erra, luy et ses escuyers et sa
 damoyelle, tant quil encontra vng escuyer "Varlet,"
 fait il, "scez tu nulles nouuelles?" "Ouy," fait il,

He meets an
 esquier,
 and asks him
 'what news?

¹ There is no trace of the rest of this chapter in the Scotch poem

' The queen,
he says "is at
Camelot
Lancelot goes on
till he sees a lady,
house a lady and
her damsel

He regards her
fixedly

An armed knight,
passing, asks him
what he is regard-
ing so closely

He replies that
he looks at what
pleases him

The knight asks
if he knows who
the lady is,

and he replies
that he knows it
is the queen

The stranger
takes Lancelot
home to lodge
with him,

and he is well
entertained

"ma dame la royne est icy pris a kamalot" "quelle
royne" fait il "Le femme au roy ertus," fut l'escuyer
Le cheualier sen part, et cheuauche tant quil treuve
vne maison forte, et voit vne dame en son suicot, qui
regardoit les piez et la forest | & auoit avec elle vne
damoiselle Le cheualier se arieste, et regarde la dame
moult longuement tant quil oublie tout autre chose
Et maintenant passa vng cheualier arme de toutes
armes, qui luy dist "Sue cheualier, que attendez
vous?" et celluy ne respond mot | car il ne la pas ouy
Et le cheualier le boutte, et luy demande quil regarde
"Je regarde," fait il, "ce que me plust Et vous nestes
mie courtois, qui de mon penser me auez iecte" "Par
la foy que vous duez o dieu," fait le cheualier estrange,
saluez vous bien qui la dame est que vous regardez?"
"Je le cuyde bien sauoir," fut le bon cheualier "Et
qui este elle," fait lautre "C'est ma dame la royne"
"Si maist dieu, estrangement la congnoissez, deables
vous font bien regarder d'uncs" "Pourquoy," fait il
"Pource que vous ne me oseriez suir par deuant la
Royne la ou ie yroye" "Certes," fuct le bon cheual-
lier, "se vous osiez aller la ou ie vous oseroy suir,
vous auez passer de courage tous les plus gins oseurs
qui oncques furent" A tant sen part le cheualier Et
le bon cheualier va apres Et quant ilz ont vne piece
alle, lautre luy dist, "vous he[r]bergerez ennuyt avec
moy, et le matin ie vous meneray la ou ie vous diz," et
le bon cheualier luy demande sil conuient ainsi faire
"Oy" | fait il Et il dist que donc lottroyera il Il
geut la nuyt chez le cheualier sur la ruiere de kamalot,
et fut moult bien herberge, et sa pucelle | et ses escuyers

III Our last extract will shew exactly where the Scottish
poem suddenly ceases, and how the story was probably con-
tinued For the latter purpose, four chapters of the French
Romance are added beyond the point where the Scotch ends,
and it is possible (judging from lines 306-312 of the Pro-
logue) that the author did not intend to go very much further
The passage begins, in the French copy, at Fol lxxvii b, col
1, and, in the Scotch poem, at l 3427

Galiot gives
Lancelot his own
horse

Lors descent de son cheual, et la baille au cheualier
Et celluy si y monte sans arrest Et gallehault monta
sur vng autre, et vient a son conroy | Si prent avec

soy les dix mille, et dit quilz voient assembler deuant,
 "et vous," fait il au roy vend, "viendres apres, si ne
 assemblerez mie si tost comme ceulx cy seront assem- and gives orders
 blez | mais quant les derrains de ceulx de dela seront to his own men
 venus, vous assemblerez, & moy mesmes vous iray
 querir" A tant amaine les dix mille pour assembler,¹
 Et quant il fut entre en la bataille il fist sonner ses
 busines tant *que* tout en retentissoit² Quant le noir He commands
 cheualier les ouyt venu, si luy sembla que grant effort the trumpets to
 de gens eut la, si se retrait vng pou vers les siens, et les be sounded
 appella entour luy, & leur dist "Seigneurs, vous estes
 tous amys du roy Or y peria comment vous le ferez"³ Lancelot ha
 Et messire yuain, qui les vit venir, dist a ses gens, rangues his men
 "Or soves tous asseurs *que* nous ne perdrons au iourd-
 huy par force de gens"⁴ Et ce disoit il pource quil
 cuidoit *que* les gens gallehault fussent tous venus⁵ Sir Yvain com
 forts Arthur s
 soldiers

Quant les x m de gallehault sassemblerent, si
 fut grande la noise, et moult en abbatent a
 leur venir | mais quant messire yuain vint, si reconforta
 moult les gens du roy artus | et tous les fuyans re
 tournent avec luy Et gallehault sen va arriere a son Galiot orders
 conroy, et commande quilz cheuauchent fermement | et chaise
 quilz se frappent es gens du roy artus⁶ de telle maniere⁷
 que nul dentreulz ne demeure a cheual "Vous estes
 tous frays Or y perra comment vous le ferez" A
 tant cheuauchent les conroys deuers leurs gens, Car ilz
 auoyent ia du pire Et quant le conroy de Gallehault
 fut venu, si changa moult laffaire | Car moult y auoyt Galiot s reserue
 grant effort de gens Et fut a leur venue le cheualier arriving his men
 awhile prevail
 noir mis a terre⁸ Et aussi les six compagnons qui
 toute iour auoyent este pres de luy⁹ Lors vint galle-
 hault, qui le remonta sur le cheual mesmes ou son corps
 seoit¹⁰ Et si tost comme il fut monte, il sen reuint a la
 meslee aussi frays comme il auoit le iour este Et
 quant il vint aux coups donner, tous ceulx qui le veoyent
 sen esmeruelloyent, Ainsi dura la bataille iusques a la
 nuyt Et quant il vint au soir ilz se departient | et
 toutesfoys les gens du roy Artus en eurent du meilleur
 Le bon cheualier se departit de lost le plus coyement
 quil peut,¹¹ et sen alla pai vng chemin entre les prestz
 et vng tertre, et cuyda que nul ne le veist | mais Galle-
 Lancelot tries to
 depart unob
 served

¹ Line 3432² Lines 3435 3440³ Lines 3441 3476⁴ Lines 3477 3480⁵ Lines 3481 3484⁶ Lines 3485, 6⁷ Line 3487 and last⁸ Compare lines 3365 3368⁹ Lines 3369, 70¹⁰ Compare lines 3391 3426¹¹ Compare line 1140

but is followed
by Galiot,

who plays him
to lodge with him
for that night

Lancelot at first
refuses till Galiot
agrees to do what-
ever Lancelot
may require of
him,

and promises to
entertain him
sumptuously,
whereupon they
return together
to Galiot's camp

Gawain seeing
Lancelot with
Galiot,

tells the Queen
that now they
are all lost

and swoons away
more than three
times

hault sen print ties bien gude, et piequa tant son cheual qui luy fut au dauint par vne adiesse, et le vint rencontrer au pied du turtre. Si le salua, et dit "que dieu le conduit." Et celui le regarde en trauers, et luy a a moult grant peine rendu son salut. "Bel amy," fait gallehault, "qui estes vous?" "Sire," fait il, "ie suis vng cheualier, ce pouz vous veou." "Ciertes," fait gallehault, "cheualier estes vous meilleur qui soit | & vous estes l'homme du monde que plus ie voudroye honnorer,¹ et si vous suis venu prier que vous herbergez ceste nyuit avec moy." Et il luy dist ainsi comme sil ne lauoit huy veu, "Qui estes vous, sire, qui me auez prie de me he[re]berger?" "Je suis gallehault, le sire de ces gens icy, vers qui vous iuez au iourd'uy garanty le royaume de lognes, lequel ie eusse ia conquis se ne fust vostre corps." "Comment" (fait il) "vous estes ennemy de monseigneur le roy artus, et me priez de herberger? | Avec vous ne herbergeray ie mie en ce point." "Haa sire," fait gallehault, "plus fuy ie pour vous, et si nay mye a commencer." Et ie vous prie que vous y herbergiez par tel conuenant que ie feray tout ce que me scaurez requierre." A tant se arresta le cheualier, et dist a gallehault, "Sire, vous promettez assez | mais ie ne scay comment il est du rendre." | et gallehault luy dist "Sire, se vous he[r]-bergez ennuyt avec moy, ie vous donneray tout ce que vous oserez diuier de bouche, et bien vous en feray seur." Et lors luy fiance, & apres luy promet bailler bons plaiges, Adonc sen vont tous deux en lost.

¶ Comment gallehault suyuit le cheualier aux noires armes, et fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena en son ost, donc le roy artus & tous ses gens en furent moult troublez.

MEssire gauvain auoyt veu aller le cheualier au noir escu, & le eust volentiers suyuy sil eust peu monter a cheual. Lors regarde contre val la riuere, et voit gallehault et le cheualier noir qui retournoyent pour venir a lost, et dist a la royne, "Haa dame, or pouons nous bien dire que nous sommes gens perdus | regardez que gallehault a conquis par scauoir." Et elle regarde, & voyt que cest le cheualier noir que gallehault emmaine, si en est tant iree quelle ne peut dire mot. Et messire gauvain se pasme en pou dheure plus de trois fois. Le roy artus vint leans | et ouyt le cry que chascun disoit, "il est mort, il est mort." Si vint a luy, et le brassa, et commença a plorer moult tendre-

¹ Compare lines 2845-8

ment Et reuent monseigneur Gauvain de pasmoison ,
Et quant il veit le roy artus, il commence a le blasmer,
et dit " Ores est venu le terme que les clerz vous
disrent Regardez le tresor que vous auez huy perdu
celluy vous toldra terre qui toute iour la vous a garantie
par son corps, et se vous fussiez preudhomme vous
leussiez retenu, ainsi comme a fait le plus preudhomme
qui viue, qui par cy deuant lemmaine " Lors voit le
roy gallehault, qui emmenoit le cheualier, dont il a tel
dueil que a pou quil ne est cheut | mais de plorer ne se
peut tenir, et toutesfois faict il la plus belle chere *quil*
peut pour son nepueu reconforter Et si tost *que* il vit
en la salle, il fist grant dueil | aussi fist chascun preud-
homme

He tells Arthur
that his time of
misfortune is
come,

for their pro-
tector is lost

Arthur also sees
Gaihot and is
deeply grieved
but tries to com-
fort his nephew

TAnt sont allez gallehault et le cheualier quilz
sont venus empres lost, Adonc luy dist le
cheualier, "Sire, ains que ie entre dedans vostre ost,
faictes moi parler aux deux plus preudhommes que vous
ayez et esquelz vous fiez le plus " Et gallehault lot-
troye Lors sen va en son tref, et prent deux des
hommes du monde ou plus il se fie, et leur dist, "Venez
auec moy et vous verrez le plus riche homme du
monde " "Comment," font ilz, "nestes vous mie le
plus riche qui soit au monde?" "Nenny," dist il |
"mais ie le seray ains que ie dorme " Ces deux estoient
le roy premier conquis | et le roi des cent cheualliers
Quant ilz virent le cheualier, si lui firent moult grant
ioye | Car ilz le congneurent bien par ses armes Et le
cheualier leur demanda qui ilz estoient | et ilz se nom-
merent sicomme vous auez ouy | et il leur dist
"Seigneurs, vostre sire vous faict moult grant honneur |
Car il dit que vous estes les deux hommes du monde
que plus il ayme, et entre luy et moy a vne conuenance
que ie vueil que vous oyez | Car il ma fiance que pour
en nuyt herberger auec luy me donnera ce que ie luy
voudray demander " Et gallehault dist | "vous dictes
verite " "Sire," faict le cheualier, "ie vueil encores
auoir la seurte de ses hommes " Et gallehault dist,
"Dictes moy comment " "Ilz me fianceront," fait le
cheualier, "*que* se vous me faillez de conuenant, ilz
vous guerpront et sen viendront auec moy la ou ie
diray," Et gallehault dit que ainsi le veult | et il le fait
fiancer Lois appella gallehault le roy premier conquis
a vne part, et luy dist "Allez auant & dictes a mes
barons quilz assemblent maintenant a monstre si hon-
norablement comme ilz pourront, et gardez que en mon
tref soient tous les deduys que len pourra trouuer en

Gaihot and Lance-
lot arrive at Ga-
liot's camp

and Lancelot
asks to speak
with the two men
whom Gaihot
most trusts

Gaihot takes him
to the 'first-con-
quest' king and
the king of a hun-
dred knights, and

Lancelot repeats
to them his com-
pact with Gaihot,

and takes their
pledge that they
will forsake
Gaihot if he
breaks his agree-
ment and will go
with himself
(Lancelot)

Gallot ordains all
kinds of enter-
tainments to be
brought to his
tent

Twenty eight
kings beside
dukes and counts
come to the feast
and honour Lan-
celot as the flower
of the knight-
hood of the world

Lancelot is richly
attired and nobly
served

After supper four
beds are pre-
pared one larger
than the rest, for
Lancelot

Gallot awhile de-
parts and Lancelot
falls asleep

Gallot then re-
turns, and lies
near Lancelot,

and hears how
his guest mur-
murs in his sleep

Next day they go
to hear mass,

and Lancelot
then demands his
arms wishing to
depart

tout lost" Loïs sen va celluy au ferrir des esperons, & fist le commandement de son seigneur Et gallehault tient le cheualier aux parolles, luy & son seneschal, tant que le commandement fust fait Si ne demoura gueres que encontre eulx vindrent deux cens barons qui tous estoient hommes de gallehault, xxviii roys, et les autres estoient ducz et contes, la fut le cheualier telle ment honnoure que oncques si grant feste ne fut pour vng homme mescongneu comme len fit pour luy a celle fois | et disoient grans & petis, "Bien viengnez, la fleur de la cheualerie du monde" | et il en auoit grant honte Ainsy vindrent iusques au tref de gallehault, si ne pourroient estre comtez les deduys et les instrumens qui leans estoient A telle ioie fut receu, et quant il fut desarme, gallehault luy fit apporter vne robe moult riche, et il la vestit quant le manger fut prest, ilz se assirent a table, et furent noblement seruis, et le cheualier fut moult honnoure

A Pres manger commanda gallehault a faire quatre litz desquelz lung estoit plus grant que les autres Quant les litz furent si richement atournez, gallehault maïne le cheualier coucher Et dist "Sire, vous gerrez icy," "Et qui gerra de la?" fait le cheualier "Quatre sergens," faict gallehault, "qui vous serviront | Et ie rray en vne chambre par dela, affin que vous soiez icy plus en paix" "Haa, Sire, pour dieu," faict il, "ne me faictes gesir plus ayse que ces autres cheualiers | car tant ne me deuez a vilennir" "Nayez garde," faict gallehault, "Car ia pour chose que vous faciez pour moi vous ne serez tenu a villain" A tant sen part gallehault Et le cheualier commence a penser au grant honneur que gallehault luy faisoit Si lenprise moult | puis se coucha, et tantost il sendormit | car moult estoit las, Et quant gallehault sceut quil fut endormy, le plus coyement quil peut se coucha en vng autre lit empres luy | et es deux autres litz se coucherent deux cheualiers, et nestoyent en la chambre que eulx quatre, sans plus La nuyt se plaint moult le cheualier en son dormant, et gallehault loit bien, car il ne dormoit gueres Ains pensa toute la nuyt a le retenir Lendemain le cheualier se leua et alla ouyr messe, et ia estoit gallehault leue | car il ne voulut mie que le cheualier laperceust Quant ilz vindrent du monstier, le cheualier demanda ses armes, & gallehault demande pourquoy Et il dist quil sen vouloit aller Et gallehault luy dist "Beau doulx amy, demourez | et ne cuydez mye que ie vous vueille deceuoir Car vous

noserez ia riens demander que vous n'ayez Et sachez
que vous pourriez bien auoir compaignie de plus riche
 homme que ie suis | mais vous ne laurez iamais a
 homme qui plus vous ayme " "Sire," faict le cheual-
 lier, "ie demoureray donc puis quil vous plaist Car
 meilleure compaignie que la vostre ne pourroye ie mye
 auoir | Mais ie vous diray presentement le don pour-
 quoy ie demoureray avec vous | et se ie ne lay, ie ny
 demoureray ia " "Sire," fait gallehault, "dictes seure-
 ment et vous laurez, se cest chose que ie puisse accom-
 plir," Et le cheualhier appella ses deux plaigis et dist
 deuant eulx, "Je vous demande," fait il, "*que* si tost
 que vous serez au dessus du roy artus, que vous luy
 alliez crier mercy si tost comme ie vous en semondray"
 Quant gallehault lentent, si en est tout esbahy, et com-
 mence a penser Et les deux roys luy dirent "A
 quoy pensez vous icy endioit, de penser n'avez mestier |
 car vous auez tant couru que vous ne pouez retourner"
 "Comment," faict Gallehault, "cuydez vous que ie me
 vueille repentir | se tout le monde estoit mien si luy
 oseroye ie bien donner mais ie pensoye a vng seul mot
 quil a dit | mais ia dieu ne maist," dist il, "se vous
 n'avez le don | car ie ne pourroye riens faire pour vous
 ou ie peusse auoir honte Mais ie vous pryé que ne me
 tollez vostre compaignie pour la donner a aultruy," et
 le cheualier luy creanca Ainsi demoura | et ilz se
 asseirent au manger qui estoit appreste Si font moult
 grant roye par tout lost du cheualier qui est demoure
 Ainsi passerent celle nuyt Lendemain gallehault et
 son compaignon allerent ouyr messe, et gallehault luy
 deist | "Sire, il est huy iour dassembler, vouldrez vous
 armes porter?" "Ouy," dist il "done porterez vous
 les miennes," fait gallehault, "pour le commencement"
 Et il dist quil les porteroit volentiers | "mais vous ne
 porterez armes," feist il a gallehault, "si non comme
 mon sergent?" "Non," dist il Lors firent apporter
 les armes, & armerent le cheualhier du fort haulbert, &
 des chausses qui trop estoient longues & lees, Lors se
 armerent les gens de gallehault et pareillement les gens
 du roy Artus, & passerent les lices de telz y eut Touth-
 ffoys le roy auoyt deffendu que nul ne les passast Si
 y eut de bonnes ioustes en pou dheure | si se assembler-
 ent tous les ostz deuant la lice, & commencerent a faire
 armes Le roy artus estoit a son estandart, et auoit
 commande que ilz menassent la roïne a sauluede se la
 descomfiture tornoit sur eulx | quant tous les ostz
 furent assemblez et le bon cheualier fust arme, si cuida

Gaihot induces
him to stay

but agun pro-
mises to do for
him whatever he
asks

Lancelot then de-
mands that Gaihot
sh'ill submit him-
self to Arthur

Gaihot is con-
founded and
ponders but then
grants Lancelot a
request

Lancelot remains
with him another
night

Next day the
hosts are again
armed for battle

Lancelot is at first mistaken for Gahot but is recognized by Gawain

Arthur's men cannot stand against Lancelot

Lancelot calls upon Gahot to keep his com pact

Gahot rides forward and finds Arthur ready to kill himself for grief the Queen being escorted away by a guard of forty knights and Gawain wishing to die

How Lancelot makes Gahot cry mercy to Arthur

Gahot demands to see King Arthur,

and at sight of him dismounts and kneels to him,

chascun que ce fust gallehault, & disoyent tous "Voicy gallehault, voicy gallehault" | messire gauvain le congneust bien & dist "Ce nest mye gallehault | ains est le cheualier aux armes noires, le meilleur cheualier du monde" | & si tost comme ilz furent assemblez, oncques ne se tant le roy Artus ne ses gens depuis que le cheualier y fut arrivee | et trop se desconfortoyent du bon cheualier qui contre eulx estoit, si furent menez rusques a la lice car trop estoient grans gens avec gallehault au partir des lices ce tindrent vne piece et souffrirent longuement | mais le souffrit ny peut riens valoir Grant fut le meschief des gens au roy artus et dit le compte que le cheualier neust mie moins de peine de tenir les gens de gallehault que ilz ne passassent oultre la lice quil auoit de chasser les gens au roy Artus Et nompourtant moult les auoit supportez | & il les eut mis oultre a force sil eust voulu | mais il demoura emmy le pas pour les aultres detenir Lors regarda tout entour de luy, et commenca a hucher | "gallehault, gallehault" et gallehault vient grant alleure, et dist "bel amy, que voulez vous?" "quoy," faict il, "ie vueil que mon conuenant me tenez," "Par ma foy," fait gallehault, "ie suis tout prest de lacomplir puis quil vous plaist" Lors picque le cheual des esperons & vient rusques a lestandart ou le roy artus estoit, qui faisoit si tresgrant dueil que a peu quil ne se occioit pource quil estoit desconft Si estoit ia la royne montee, et lemmenoient quarante cheualliers Et monseigneur gauvain, que on vouloit emporter en letiere | mais il dit quil aymeroit mieulx mourir en ce point que veoir toute cheualerie morte et honnye si se pasma tellement que len cuydoit bien que il mourust incontinent

¶ Comment lancelot par la prouesse conquis tout, et fist tant que galehault cria mercy au roy artus

Quant le cheualier veit gallehault prest dacomplir son conuenant, il rura bien que oncques si loyal compaignon ne fut trouue Il en a telle pytie quil en souspire moult fort, & dit entre ses dens "Haa dieu, qui pourra ce desservir?" & gallehault cheuauche rusques a lestandart et demande le roy artus Il vient auant moult dolent & esmaye comme celluy qui tout honneur et toute roye terrienne cuyde auoir perdue, Et quant gallehault le voit, si luy dit "sure, roy artus, venez auant, & navez paour | car ie vueil a vous parler" et quant le roy louyt, il sesmerueille moult que ce peult estre, Et de si long comme galehault le voit venir, il descend de son cheual et se agenouille, et dit "Sue,

ie vous viens faire droit de ce que ie vous ay meffait , and submits him
si men repens, et me metz en vostre mercy " self to him
humbly

Quant le roy lentend, il a merueilleusement grant Arthur over
ioye, et lieue les mains vers le ciel, louant Dieu joyed praises
God
de ceste aduantage | et se le roy fait bonne chere, en-
cores la faict meilleure Gallehault et il se lieue de
genoulx, & sentiebaissent, en font moult grande chere
lung a lautre lors dist Gallehault | " sire, faictes vostre
plaisir de moy | car ie metz en vostre saisine mon corps
pour en faire ce que il vous plaira Et sil vous plaist,
ie yai retrainie mes gens arriere, & puis reuendray a
vous incontinent " "Allez doncques," fait le roy | "car
ie vueil parler a vous " A tant sen part gallehault &
reuient a ses gens | & les en faict aller Et le roy
enuoya apres la royne, qui sen alloit faisant grand dueil
et les messages cheuauchent tant que ilz lattaignent |
et sont venus a elle, & luy comptent la ioye que aduenue
leur est Et elle ne le peult croire tant quelle voy les
enseignes que le roy luy enuoye tant coururent les
nouuelles que monseigneur gauvain le sceut, lequel en
eut grant ioye sur tous les aultres, et dist au roy
"Sire, comment a ce este?" "Certes, ie ne scay," fait
il "mais ie croy que telle a este le plaisir de nostre
seigneur" moult est grande la ioye, & moult se esmer-
ueille chascun comment ce peult estre aduenu Galle-
hault dist a son compaignon "que voulez vous que ie
face? iay fait vostre commandement, & le roy ma dit
que ie retourne | mais ie vous conuoyeray auant iusques
a voz tentes " "Haa sire," fait le cheualier, "aincoys
vous irez au roy & luy porterez le plus grant honneur
que vous pourrez Et tant auez fait pour moy que ie
ne le pourroye desseruir | mais tant vous pryé, pour
dieu | et pour lamour que vous auez a moy, que nul ne
sache ou ie suis" | ainsi sen vont parlant iusques a leurs
tentes chascun scait que la paix est faicte | mais
plusieurs en sont dolens | car mieulx aymassent la
guerre que la paix lois sont descenduz les deux
compaignons, et si tost quilz furent desarmez, Galle-
hault print vne de ses meilleures robbes pour aller a la
court et feist cryer par tout son ost que chascun sen
allast, fors tant seulement ceulx de son hostel Apres
appella les deux roys, et leur baille son compaignon, &
leur commande quilz facent autant de luy comme de
son corps mesmes A tant monte Gallehault, et sen
va a la court du roy artus Et le roy luy vint alen-
contre, et la royne qui ia estoit retournee, & la dame de
malehault avec plusieurs dames & damoysselles A tant

Gaihot first ask-
ing Arthur to
leave dismissed
his troops to their
tents

The Queen and
Sir Gawain re-
joice greatly

Lancelot prays
Gaihot not to re-
veal where he is,
and they return
to their tents.

Gaihot commits
his guest to the
care of the two
kings and de-
parts to speak
with Arthur

Arthur and Galot go together to the tower where Gawain lies ill

Gawain welcomes Galot

The Queen the King and Gawain rejoice at Galot's coming,

but he soon after departs to see Iancelot for a short time promising to return

Iancelot tells Galot to do whatever Arthur wishes

He charges Galot again not to ask his name but to tell him about Arthur

Galot praises the Queen

and Lancelot sheds tears

vont en la bretesche ou monseigneur gauvain gisoit
malade et quant il sceut que gallehault venoit, il
sefforce de belle chere faire, comme celluy qui oncques
mes ne lauoit veu de si pres lors luy dist | "bien
soyez vous venu comme de celluy dont ie desiroye moult
lacoistance | car vous estes l'homme du monde qui plus
doibt estre prise & ayne a droit de toutes gens Et ie
cuyde que nul ne scait si bien congnoistre preudhomme
comme vous & bien y a paru" Ainsi parle messie
gauvain a gallehault, & il luy demande comment il luy
est | et Gauvain dist "Jay este pres de mort mais
la grant amour qui est entre vous & le roy ma guery"
Moult font grant ioie le roy artus & la royne & mon-
seigneur gauvain de la venue de gallehault | et tout le
iour ont parle de amour et dacoistance Mais du non
chevalier ne tiennent ilz nulles parolles | ans passent le
iour a resiouyr lung lautre tant quil vint au vespre
Lors demande gallehault congie de ses gens aller veoir
Et le roy le luy donne | "mais vous reuiendrez," fait il,
"incointment," et gallehault le luy octroye | si sen-
reuent a son compaignon & luy demande comment il a
lepous fait | et il luy respondit que bien, "Sire," fait
gallehault, "comment feyay ie | le roy ma moult prie
que ie retourne a luy, & il me feroit mal de vous laisser
en ce point" "Haa, sire chevalier, pour dieu mercy,
vous ferez ce que monseigneur le roy voudra car iama
s plus preudhomme que il est ne eustes acointance
Mais ie vueil que vous me donnez vng don" Et galle-
hault luy dist "Demandez ce quil vous plaira | car ie
ne vous escondroye iama," "Sire," fait il, "ie vous
remercye Vous me auez donne que vous ne me de-
manderez mon nom deuant que ie le vous diray" "Et
ie men tiendray a tant puis que vous le voulez," dit
gallehault "Et ne doubtez pas que ce eust esto la
premiere chose que ie vous eusse demande, si men
tarray a tant" Lors luy demanda de lacoistance du
roy artus | mais il ne nomme mie la royne | et galle-
hault dit que "le roy est moult preudhomme, & moult
me poyse que ie ne lay congneu pieca | Car moult en
feusse amende | mais ma dame la royne est sy vaillante
que oncques plus honneste dame ne vey" et quant le
chevalier ouyt parler de la royne, si se embronche et
commence a souspirer durement et gallehault le re-
garde et se esmerueille moult pource que les lames luy
cheoyent des yeulx, si commence a parler daultre chose

Quant ilz ont longuement parle ensemble, le cheua-
lier noir luy dist "Allez, si ferez a monsei-

THE FRENCH CONTINUATION OF THE SCOTCH POEM

gneu le roy compaignie, et si escoutez sy vous oirez de moy nulles parolles, & vous me compterez demain ce que vous aurez ouy" "Voultentiers, sire," fust gallehault | lors le accolle, et dit aux roys "Je vous baille en garde cest homme comme le cucur de mon ventre" Ainsi sen va gallehault & le cheualier demoure en la garde de deux preu[d]hommes du pays de Gallehault | mais il ne fault mye demander sil fust honnore | car len faisoit assez plus pour luy quil neust voulu celle nuyt geurent les deux roys au tref gallehault pour lamour du cheualier & luy firent entendant quilz ny coucheroyent mye | & ilz le firent coucher ainsi que Gallehault auoit fait lautre nuyt Au commencement dormit le cheualier moult fort, et quant vint a mynuit si commença a soy tourner, et commença a faire vng duel si grant que tous ceulz qui entour luy estoient sen esueillèrent Et en son refrain disoit souvent "Haa chetif, que pourray ie faire?" Et toute nuyt demena tel deuil Au matin se leuerent les deux roys le plus coyement quilz peurent | & moult se merueillent quil pouoit auoir daultre part fut gillchault leue, & vint a son tief veoir son compaignon Il demande aux deux roys que son compaignon fut Et ilz luy dient quil auoit toute nuyt mene grant duel Lors entre en la chambre ou il estoit, et si tost comme il le ouyt venir il essuye ses yeulx, Adonc gallehault, cuidant que il dormist, saillist dehors de la chambre incontinent, apres le cheualier se leua Et gallehault vit que il auoit les yeulx rouges et enflez Adonc le prent par la main, et le tyre a part, et luy dist "Beau doulx compaignon, pourquoy vous occiez vous ainsi? dont vous vient ce duel que vous auez toute nuyt demene, & le desplaisir que vous auez? Je vous pryé pour dieu que vous me diez la cause, et ie vous ayderay se nul homme mortel y peult conseil mettre," & commence a plourer si durement comme sil veist mort la chose du monde que mieulx aymast Lors est gallehault moult a malayse et luy dit, "Beau doulx compaignon, dictes moy vostre mescheance | car il nest nul homme au monde, sil vous auoit riens forfait, que ie nen pourchasse vostre droit" Et il dist que nul ne luy a riens meffrit "beau doulx amy, pourquoy menez vous doncques si grant duel? Vous poise il que ie vous ay fait mon maistre & mon compaignon?" "Haa," fait il, "vous auez assez plus fait pour moy que ie ne pourroye desservir, ne riens du monde ne me met a malaise que mon cueur, qui a toute paour que cueur mortel pourrait

Lancelot asks
Galiot to return
to Arthur and
to report to him
all the conversa-
tion

Lancelot sleeps
with the two
kings in Galiot's
tent

but awakes at
midnight and
makes a great
moaning

Galiot comes to
see after Lancelot

finds him with his
eyes red and
swoon,

and conjures him
to tell him what
the matter is

Lancelot cries bitterly,

and says that it is
his heart which
has all the dread
that it is possible
for mortal heart
to have

auoir Si doubte moult que vostre grant debonnairete
ne me occie" De ceste chose est gallehault moult a
They go to Mass, malayse, si reconforte son compaignon Apres allerent
ouyr masse Quant vint *que* le prestre eut fait trois
parties du corps de nostre seigneur, gallehault se trait
and Lancelot de
chares his belief
thrit the Bread is
the Body of
Christ
auant, et tient son compaignon par la main, & luy
monstre le corps de nostre seigneur que le prestre tenoit
entre ses mains, Puis luy dist "doncques ne croyez
vous pas bien que cest le corps de nostre saulueur?"
"Voirement le croy ie bien," fait le cheualier Et
gallehault luy dist "beau doulx amy, or ne me
mescreez mye que ces trois parties de chair que ie vois
en semblance de pain, ia ne feray en ma vie chose *que*
ie cuyde qui vous ennuye mais toutes les choses que
ie scauray qui vous plairont, pourchasseray a mon
pouvoir" "sire," fait il, "grant mercys" A tant se
taisent iusques apres la messe | et lors demanda galle-
hault a son compaignon quil fera, "Sire," fait il,
"vous ne laisserez mie le roy en ce point | ains yrez luy
faire compaignie" "Sire," fait il, "grant mercys,"
A tant sen part de luy, si le rebaille aux preudhommes
de la court du roy artus si font de luy grant signeurie
sicomme ilz peuent

After dinner the
King and Queen
visit Gawain and
he asks Galiot
who made peace
between him and
Arthur

'A knight' says
Galiot
But what
knight asks
Gawain

The Black
Knight, answers
the Queen show
him to us

'I cannot,' says
Galiot he is
not from my
country,

ET quant vint apres disner, sy furent le roy & la
royne & gallehault appuyez au liet de messire
gauvain, tant *que* messire gauvain dist a gallehault
"Sire, or ne vous poise dune chose que ie vous de-
manderay" "Certes," fait gallehault, "non fera il"
"sire, celle paix qui fut entre vous & mon oncle, par
qui fut elle, pai la chose au monde qui plus vous
aymez?" "Sire," fait il, "vous me auez tant coniuire
que ie le vous diray Vng cheualier la fist" "Et qui
est le cheualier?" fait messire gauvain "Si maist
dieu," fait gallehault, "ie ne scay" "Qui fut celluy
aux noires armes?" deist messire gauvain "Ce fut,"
fait il, "vng cheualier," "Tant," fait il, "en pouez
vous bien dire | mais acquitter vous conuent" "Je
me suis acquite de ce que me coniuirastes Ne plus ne
vous en diray ores | ne rien ne vous en eusse ores dit,
se vous ne me eussiez coniuire" "Par dieu," fait la
royne, "ce fut le cheualier noir | mais faictes le nous
monstrer" "Qui | moy, dame?" fait gallehault, "ie
le vous puez bien monstrer sicomme celluy qui riens
nen scait!" "Taisez vous," fait la royne, "il est
demoure auec vous, & hier porta voz armes" "Dame,"
fait il | "il est vray | mais ie ne le vys oncques puis
que ie party du roy a la premiere fois" "comment,"

fait le roy, "ne le cognoissiez vous mye | ie cuydoie que il fust de vostre terre" "Si maist dieu, non est," fait gallehault "certes," fait le roy, "ne de la myenne non est il mye" | Moult tindrent longuement gallehault a parolle le roy et la royne pour auoir le nom du cheualier | mais plus nen peuvent taire et messire gauvain craint quil ne ennuye a gallehault, si dist au roy "Or en laissez a tint le parler certes le cheualier est preudhomme, & pleust a dieu que ie luy ressemblasse" Moult loe messire gauvain le cheualier Si en ont la parolle lisee | et gallehault la recommence et dit "Sire, veistes vous oncques meilleur cheualier que celluy au noir escu?" "certes," fait le roy, "ie ne vy oncques cheualier de qui ie aymasse mieulx l'accountance pour cheualerie," "Non" | fait gallehault "Or me dictes," faict gallehault, "par la foy que vous deuez a ma dame qui cy est, combien vous voudriez auoir donne pour auoir son accountance a tousioursmais?" "Si maist dieu," faict il, "ie luy partiroye la moytie de tout ce que ie pourroye auoir, fors seulement de ceste dame" "Certes," fait gallehault, "assez y mettriez Et vous, messire gauvain, se dieu vous doint sante que tant desirez, quel meschief en feriez vous pour auoir compaignie a si preudhomme?" Et quant messire gauvain lot, si pense vng petit comme celluy qui ne cuyde iamais auoir sante "Se dieu me donnoit la sante que ie desire | ie voudroye orendroit estre vne des plus belles dames du monde, par conuenant quil me aymast tous les iours de sa vie" "par ma foy," fait gallehault, "assez y auez mis" "Et vous, madame, quel meschief feriez vous par conuenant que vng tel cheualier fust tousiours en vostre seruiue?" "par dieu," fait elle, "messire gauvain y a mis toutes les offres que dame y peut mettre" Et monseigneur gauvain & tous aultres se commencerent a rire "Gallehault," fait messire gauvain, "qui tous nous auez adureux par le serment que ie vous comuray, ores qui voudriez vous y auoir mys?" "Si maist dieu," faict gallehault, "ie y voudroye auoir tourne mon honneur a honte, par tel si que ieusse a tousioursmais vng si bon cheualier en ma compaignie" "Sy maist dieu," faict messire gauvain, "plus y auez mys que nous" et lors se pensa messire gauvain que cestoit le noir cheualier qui le paiz auoit faict | car pour luy auoit tourne son honneur a honte, quant il vert quil estoit au dessus Et le dist gauvain a la royne, & se fut la cause dont gallehault fut plus prise, Moult tindrent longuement parolles du cheualier

and Galot will not disclose the knight's name,

but asks Arthur if he ever saw a better knight and what he would give to know him henceforth

'Half of all I have, except my wife says Arthur

And what would you give Gawain?

"I should like to turn woman if he would love me all his life

"I can offer no more than Gawain says the Queen

'Well says Galot I would turn all my honour into shame for his sake

So Gawain concludes that it was the Black Knight who brought about the peace

The Queen walks
away with Galiot
tells him she loves
him much and
prays him to let
her see the Black
Knight

He promises to do
all he can for her

and the Queen
says I shall be
sure to see him if
you try,

for he is in your
custody Send
and get him

Arthur wishes
Galiot's people
and his own to be
brought nearer
to one another

Galiot returns to
Lancelot,

tells him what the
King, Gawain
and the Queen
have said of him

and asks him
what answer he
shall give the
Queen

et la royne sadressa, et dist quelle sen vouloit aller vers la bretesche pour veoir les prez, et gallehault la conuoie si le print la royne par la main & luy dist "Gallehault, ie vous ayne moult, & il est vray que vous auez le cheualier en vostre baillie, & par aduenture il est tel que ie le congnois bien, si vous prie si cher que vous auez mamour, que vous faciez tant que ie le voye" "Dame," fait gallehault, "ie nen ay encores nulle saisine | & ne le vy puis que la paix fut faicte de moy & du roy Et se il estoit or en mon tref, si y conuen diot il aultre volente que le vostre & que la mienne Et bien saichez que tant me auez conuure que ie mettray tout le pouoir que ie pourray comment vous pourriez parler a luy?" "se vous en faictes vostre pouoir," fait elle, "ie le verray bien, & ie men attens a vous, et faictes tant que ie soye vostre a tousiours car cest vng des hommes du monde que ie verroye plus volentiers" "Dame," fait il, "ie en feray mon pouoir" "Grant mercys," fait elle "Or gardez que ie le voye au plus tost que vous pourrez | car il est en vostre baillie, ie le scay bien | et se il est en vostre terre, enuoyez le querre" Atant sen part gallehault & sen vient au roy Et monseigneur gauvain & le roy lui dient "gallehault, ie suis deliure de mes gens, ores faictes approcher voz gens des nostres, ou ie feray approcher les nostres des vostres | Car nous sommes a priuee mesgne" "Sire," faict gallehault, "ie feray approcher les miens daultre part de cest riuere si que mon tref sera endroit le vostre, et sera vne nef appareillee en quoy nous passerons dicy la et de la icy" "Certes," fait le roy, "moult auez bien dit"

LOrs sen va Gallehault en sa tente, et trouue son compaignon moult pensif Il luy demande comment il a puis fait, Et il dist, "bien, se paour ne me mestriast" et gallehault dist, "de quoy auez vous telle paour?" "que ie ne soye congneu," dist il "or nen ayez mie paour, car vous ny serez ia congneu, se vostre volente ne y est," Lors luy compte les offres que le roy et mesure gauvain ont fait pour luy, et ce que la royne dit | et comment la royne la tenu a grant parlement de le veoir | et comme il luy respondit "et saichez que elle na de nully si tres grant desir de veoir comme de vous Et monseigneur la Roy ma pryé que ie face mes gens approcher | car nous sommes tiop loing lung de lautre Or me dictes que vous voulez que je face | car il est en vostre plaisir" "Je loue que vous facez ce que monseigneur le roy vous pryé," "Et a ma

dame que respondray ie, beau doulx amy?" "Certes," fait il, "ie ne scay" Lors commence a souspirer Et gallehault luy deist "Beau doulx amy, ne vous esmayez point | mais dictes moy comment vous voulez quil soit | car bien sachez quil sera ainsi comme vous vouldrez | et ie aymeroye mieulx estre courrouce a la moytie du monde que a vous tout seul ores me dictes quil vous en plaist" "Sire," faict ledit cheualier, "ce que vous me louerez | car ie suis en vostre garde desormais" "Certes," fait gallehault, "il me semble que pour veoir ma dame la royne il ne vous peult empyrer" Lors appercent gallehault assez de son penser, & le tient si court quil luy octroye ce quil demande | "mais il conuendra," faict il, "que il soyt faict celement, que nul ne le saiche | fors moy et vous" Et gallehault dit que il ne se soulye point "Or dictes," (fait le cheualier a gallehault,) "a ma dame que vous me auez enuoye querre" "Sur moy en laissez le surplus," dit Gallehault Lors sen part a tant, et commanda ses trefz a tendre la ou il auoit en conuenant au roy | et son seneschal fist son commandement

Lancelot sighs,

and says "What ever you advise

' There will be no harm in seeing her answers Gahlot

Lancelot says the matter must be managed secretly, and they agree that Gahlot shall tell the Queen he has sent to seek for Lancelot

¶ Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne veit Lancelot, Et comment ilz se araisonnerent ensemble, et parlerent de plusieurs choses

How Guinevere and Lancelot meet and talk

A Tant sen partit gallehault & sen vient au tref du roy, & si tost comme la royne le voit, si luy courut a lencontie, & luy demande comment il auoit employte la besongne "dame," faict il, "ie en ay fait tant que ie craing que lamour de vostre pryere ne me tolle la chose du monde que ie ayme plus" "Sy maist dieu," faict elle, "vous ne perderez riens par moy que ie ne vous rende ou double | mais que y pouez vous," fait elle, "perdre?" "Celluy mesmes que vous demandez," fait gallehault | "Car ie doubte quil ne se courrouce, et que ie ne le perde a tousiours" "Certes," faict elle, "ce ne pouray ie pas rendre | mais ia par moy ne le perderez, se dieu plaist Et touteffoys dictes moy quant il viendra" | "dame," fait il, "quant il pourra | car ie lay enuoye querre, et croy que il ne demourra mye longuement" De leui conseil entendit ung peu la dame de mallehault qui sen prenoit garde et nen faisoit mye semblant Lors sen partit gallehault et vient a ses gens qui estoyent logez la ou il auoit commande

The Queen asks Gahlot what he has done for her

Sent to seek for your knight, says he

Gahlot returns to his men,

Q Vant il fut descendu, il parla a son Seneschal et luy deist | "quant ie vous enuoyeray querrr, venez a moy, vous & mon compaignon en ce lieu la"

and tells his Seneschal to bring Lancelot when he sends for him

Galot then goes
back to the
Queen says he
thinks she will
see her knight
that evening and
appoints to meet
her in an Orchard
below

After supper the
Queen goes to the
Orchard,

and Galot sends
for his Seneschal
and the Knight,

who come

The Queen at first
cannot think that
either is the black
knight,

but one is so
bashful that she
fixes on him,

seats him by her,
smiles on him,
says she has so
longed to see him

and now he must
tell her who he is
I don't know
he answers

Et le roy des cent cheualiers, qui son seneschal estoit, dist que moult volentiers feroit son commandement & son plaisir Lors salua Gallehault son compaignon, et sen retourna a la court Et quant la royne veit gallehault qui estoit venu, elle luy dist que il gardast bien et loyaulment ce quil luy auoit promis Et il luy dist | "dame, ie cuyde que vous verrez ennuyt ce que vous auez tant desire" Quant elle ouyt ce, si en fut moult ioyeuse, et moult luy ennuya ce iour pour sa volente accomplir du desir *que* elle auoit de parler a celuy ou toutes ses pensees estoient Lors luy deist Gallehault, "nous yrons apres soupper en ce vergier la aual" | et elle luy octroye Quant ce vint apres souper, si appelle la royne | la dame de mallehault | et dame Lore de carduel, une sienne pucelle, et sen vont tout droit la ou gallehault auoyt dit | et gallehault prent ung escuyer et luy dist "Va et dy a mon seneschal que il viengne la ou ie luy commanday" Et celuy y va Apres ne demoura guaires que le seneschal y vint, luy et le cheualier Ilz estoient tous deux de grant beaulte, Quant ilz approcherent, si congneut la dame de mallehault le cheualier comme celluy que elle auoyt eu maint iour en sa baillie Et pource quelle ne vouloit mye que il la congneut, se embroncha, et ilz passent oultre le seneschal les salue Et gallehault dit a la royne "Dame, lequell vous semble il que se soit?" | et elle dit "Certes, ilz sont tous deux beaulx cheualliers | mais ie ne voy corps ou il puisse auoir tant de prouesse que le noir cheualier auoit" "or saichez, dame, que cest l'ung de ces deux" | a tant sont venuz auant, et le cheualier tremble si que a peine peult saluer la royne, & la royne sen esmerueille lors se agenouillent eulx deux, et le cheualier la salue | mais cest moult pourement | car moult estoit honteux Lors se pense la royne que cest il Et gallehault dit au seneschal "allez, si faictes a ces dames compaignie" Et celluy fait ce que son sire luy commande A doncques la royne prent le cheualier par la main & le assiet iouxte elle Sy luy fait moult beau semblant & dit en riant "Sire, moult vous auons desire, tant que, dieu mercy et gallehault, vous voyons et nonpourtant encores ne croy ie mye que ce soit celluy que ie demande | & gallehault ma dit que cestes vous | & encores vouldroye scauoir qui vous estes par vostre bouche mesmes, se vostre plaisir y estoit" Et celuy dit que il ne scait | et onques ne la regarda au visaige Et la royne ce esmerueille que il peult auoir, tant quelle souspeconne une partie de ce quil a Et gallehault, qui

le voigt si honteux, pense quil veult dire a la royne son
 penser seul a seul lors sen vient messire gauvain celle
 part, et fait rasseoir les damoyselles pour ce que leuees ses-
 toient encontre luy Puis commencent a parler de maintes
 choses Et la Royne dit au cheualier, "Beau sire,
 pourquoy vous celez vous de moy? Certes il ne y a
 cause pourquoy, nestes vous mie celluy qui porta les
 noires armes, et qui vainquist lassemblee?" "Dame,
 nenny" | "et nestes vous pas celluy qui porta lende-
 main les armes a gallehault?" "Dame, ouy," "Donc
 estes vous celluy qui vainquistes lassemblee qui fut
 faicte le premier iour par deuers nous et par¹ deuers
 Gallehault?" "Dame, non suis" Quant la royne ot
 ainsi parler le cheualier, a donc apperceoit elle bien quil
 ne veult mie congnoistre quil eust vaincue lassemblee,
 si len prise mieulx la royne | car quant vng homme se
 loe luy mesmes, il tourne son honneur a honte | et
 quant alultruy le loe, adonc il est mieulx prise "Or
 me dictes," fait la royne a lancelot | "qui vous fist
 cheualier?" "Dame," fait il, "vous," "Moy?" fait
 elle, "Et quant?" "Dame," fait il, "vous remembrez
 vous point quant vng cheualier vint a Kamalot, lequel
 estoit naure de deux troncons de lance au corps, et
 dune espee parmy la teste, et que vng varlet vint a
 court en vng vendredy, et fut cheualier le dymenche, et
 deffera le cheualier?" "De ce," fait elle, "me souient
 il bien | et se dieu vous aist, feustes vous ce que la
 dame du lac amena en court vestu dune robe blanche?"
 "Dame, ouy" "Et pourquoy dictes vous donc que ie
 vous fis cheualier?" "Dame," fait il, "ie dys vray |
 Car la custume est telle que nul ne peut estre cheual-
 lier sans ceindre espee Et celluy de qui il tient lespee,
 le faict cheualier, de vous la tiens ie Car le roy ne
 la me donna onques Pour ce dis ie que vous me feistes
 cheualier" De ce est la royne moult ioyeuse | "ou vous
 en allastes vous au partir de court?" "Dame, ie men
 allay pour secourir la dame de noehault," "Et durant ce
 temps me mandastes vous riens?" "Dame, ouy | ie vous
 enuoyay peuz pucelles" "Il est vray," dist la royne
 "Et quant vous partistes de noehault, trouuastes vous nul
 cheualier qui se reclamast de moy?" "Dame, ouy, vng
 qui gardoit vng gue, et me dist que descendisse de dessus
 mon cheual et le vouloit auoir, et ie luy demanday a qui il
 estoit | et il dist a vous Puis luy demanday apres, qui le
 commandoyt Et il me dist quil nauoyt nul commande-
 ment que le sien Et adonques remys le pied en lestrief et

Galot leaves the
 two to them
 selves

and the Queen
 asks the knight
 Are not you he
 who wore the
 black armour
 and overcame
 everyone?

'No I am not,
 saith he

refusing to praise
 himself

'Then who made
 you a knight and
 when?

"You at Kama
 lot when the
 pieces of a spear
 were drawn out
 of the wounded
 knight,

and you girded on
 my sword thus
 knighting me

and I went away
 to help the Lady
 of Noehault and
 sent you two
 damsels

Then I met a
 man who said he
 was your knight

¹ The original has *pat*

and I fought him
(for which I crave
your pardon)

After that I took
the Sorrowful
Castle and there
I saw you thrice,

last when you
thought you had
lost Gawain and
his companions,

and I helped to
deliver him from
prison

The Queen asks
the knight who
was in the turret
above his room
there

"A damsel whom
I never dishon-
oured,
but I asked her
not to leave till
she saw my mes-
senger or me
which I then
forgot and kept
her there a very
long time

How the Queen
knew Lancelot

When she heard
of this damsel the
Queen knew it
must be Lancelot

remontay | Car ie estoie ia descendu | et luy dis que il
ne lauoit point, et me combatis a luy Et ie seiv bien
que ie vous fis oultraige, si vous en eue mercy" | "Certes
a moy ne en feistes vous point | Car il nestoyt nuyt a
moy | et luy sceuz mauuais gre de ce quil ce reclama de
moy Mais or me dictes on vous en allastes la?" "Dame,
ie men allay a la douloureuse garde" | "& qui la con-
quist?" "Dame, ie y entray" | "et ne vous y vîz ie onc-
ques" "Ouy, plus de troys foys" "Et en quel temps?"
fist elle "Dame," fist il, "vng iour que ie vous deman-
day se vous voulez leans entrer, Et vous distes ouy |
et estiez moult esbahye par semblant" "Et quel escu
portiez vous?" "Dame, ie portay a la premiere foys
vng escu blanc a vne bande de belif vermeille Et
lautre foys vng ou il y auoyt deux bendes" | "Et vous
vys ie plus?" "Ouy, la nuyt que vous cuidiez auon
perdu messire Gauvain et ses compagnons, et que les
gens cryoyent que len me prenist, Je vins hois a tout
mon escu a troys bendes" "Certes," fuct elle, "ce poise
moy | car se on vous eust detenu, tous les enchan-
tements feussent demourez | Mais or me dictes, fustes
vous ce qui iettastes messire Gauvain de prison?"
"Dame, ie y ayday a mon pouon" "Certes," fait elle,
"en toutes les choses que vous me dictes ie nay trouue
si non verite Mais or me dictes qui estoit en vne tour
nelle dessus la chambre monseigneur" "Dame, cestoyt
vne pucelle que ie ne villennay oncques | Car ma dame
du lac la me auoyt enuoyee | si me trouua en ceste tour-
nelle | il fut assez qui la honnora pour moy Quant ie
ouy nouuelles de monseigneur Gauvain, si en fut moult
angoisseux, et men party de la Damoiselle qui avecques
moy debuot venir, et luy priay que elle ne se remuast
tant que elle eust mon messaige ou moy Si fus si sur-
pris de tresgrant affaire que ie loubliay | et elle fut
plus loyalle vers moy que ie ne fus courtois vers elle |
car oncques ne se remua iusques a ce quelle eut mes
enseignes, et ce fut grant piece apres"

Comment la royne congneut Lancelot apres quil eut
longuement parle a elle, et quil luy eut compte
de ses aduentures Et comment la premiere
acontance fut faicte entre lancelot et la royne
genieure par le moyen de gallehault

Quant la royne eut parle de la damoiselle, si scait
bien que cest Lancelot Si luy enquist de toutes
les choses quelle auoit ouy de luy, et de toutes le trouua
vray disant, "Or me dictes," fait elle, "vous vy ie
puis?" "Ouy, dame, telle heue que vous me eustes

bien mestier | car ieusse este noye a kamalot se ne eussiez vous este "Comment! feustes vous celluy que daguenet le fol print?" "Dame, prins fus ie sans faulte" "Et ou alliez vous?" "Dame, ie alloye apres vng cheuallier" "Et vous combatistes vous a luy" | "dame, ouy" "Et dillec ou allastes vous?" "Dame, ie trouuay deux grans villains que me occirent mon cheual | mais messire yvain, qui bonne aduenture ayt, men donna vng" "Ha, ha," fait elle, "ie scay bien qui vous estes, Vous auez nom lancelet du lac" Il se taist "Par dieu," faict elle, "pourneant le celez | long temps a que messire Gauvain apporta nouuelles de vostre nom a court," Lors luy compta comment messire yvain auoit compte que la damoysele auoit dit | cest la tierce "Et anten quelles armes portastes vous?" "Vnes vermes" "Par mon chef cest verite Et auant hier pourquoy feistes vous tant darmes comme vous feistes?" Et il commença a soupirer "Dictes moy seurement | Car ie scay bien que pour aulcune dame ou damoysele le feistes vous, et me dictes qui elle est, par la foy que vous me deuez" "Haa, dame, ie voy bien quil le me conuent dire, cestes vous" "Moy?" faict elle "Voire, dame" "Pour moy ne rompistes vous pas les troyes lances que ma pucelle vous porta?" "Car ie me mis bien hors du mandement, dame, ie fis pour elle ce que ie deuz, et pour vous ce que ie peux" "Et combien a il que vous me aymez tant?" "Des le iour que ie fus tenu pour cheuallier, et ie ne lestoye mye" | "Par la foy que vous me deuez, dont vindrent ces amours que vous auez en moy mises?" "dame," fait il, "vous le me feistes faire qui de moy feistes vostre amy, se vostre bouche ne me a menty" "Mon amy!" faict elle, "comment?" "Dame," fait il, "ie vins deuant vous quant ie eu prins congie monseigneur le roy | si vous commanday a dieu, et dis que ie estoye vostre cheuallier en tous lieux Et vous me dictes que vostre amy et vostre cheuallier voulliez vous que ie feusse Et ie dys, "a dieu! dame" Et vous distes "a dieu! mon beau doulx amy!" Ce fut le mot qui preudhomme me fera, se ie le suis, ne oncques puis ne fus a si grant meschef que il ne men remembrast Ce mot ma conforte en tous meus ennuys Cest mot ma de tous maulx guarir Cest mot ma fait riche en mes pouretez," "Par ma foy," fait la royne, "ce mot fut en bonne heure dict | et dieu en soyt aoure | ne ie ne le prenoye pas acertes comme vous feistes, et a maint preudhomme ay ie ce dict ou ie ne pensay oncques riens que le dire Mais la coustume est

and asks him if
he was the knight
whom Daguenet
took He answers
Yes and that
two rascals killed
his horse and
Yvain gave him
another

' Ah then your
name is Lance
lot says she

'and for what
lady or damsel
did you do such
feats of arms the
day before yes
terday?

"For you Lady
and for you I
broke the three
lances that you
maiden broug^{ht}
me

for you had made
me your friend
and said I was
your knight in
all lands, and bid
me adieu as your
own sweet friend

That word has
never left me but
always been my
strength and
wealth

Oh but that
was only an ordi-
nary compli-
ment says Gui-
nevere to tease
him

This grieves Lan-
celot so that he
nearly faints at
which Galiot is
greatly grieved

tells the Queen
that Lancelot is
the gallantest
and the best of
men

and prays her to
have mercy on
him

What mercy?
says she

there is nothing
he can ask of me
that I will not
do but he will
not ask

"He does not
dare answer
Galiot but I will
ask for him

telle des cheualhers que font a munte dame semblant
de telles choses dont a gueres ne leur est au cueu " Et
ce disoit elle pour veoir de combien elle le pourroit
mettre en malaise, Car elle veoit bien quil ne preten-
doit a autre amour que a la sienne | mais elle se delec-
toyt a sa malaisete veoir, et il eut si grant angoisse que
par vng pou qzai ne se pasma | & la royne eut paour
quil ne cheist, si appella gallehault, et il y vint acouant
Quant il voyt que son compaignon est si courrouce, si
en a si grant angoisse que plus ne peut " Haa, dame,"
fait gallehault, "vous le nous pourrez bien tollir, et ce
seroit trop grand dommaige" "Certes, sire, se seroit
mon," "Et ne scauez vous pour qui il a tant fait
darmes?" faict gallehault "Certes, nenny," faict
elle | "mais, se il est veoir ce qui ma este dict, cest
pour moy," "Dame, se maist dieu, bien len pouez
croire | cai aussi comme il est le plus preudhomme de
tous les hommes | aussi est son cueur plus vray que
tous aultres" "Voirement," fait elle, "direz vous quil
seroit preudhomme se vous scauez quil a fait darmes
puis quil fut cheualher" Lors luy compte tout ainsi
comment vous auez ouy | "et sachez quil a ce faict
seulement pour moy," fait elle Lors luy prie galle-
hault, & dist "Pour dieu, dame, ayez de luy mercy,
et faictes pour moy ainsi comme ie fis pour vous quant
vous men priastes" "Quelle mercy voulez vous que
ien aye?" "Dame, vous scauez que ie vous ayme
sur toutes, et il a fait pour vous plus que oncques
cheualier ne fist pour dame, et sachez que la paix de
moy et de monseigneur neust ia este faicte se neust il
este" "Certes," faict elle, "il a plus faict pour moy
que ne pourroye desservir, ne il ne me pourroyt chose
requerre dont ie le peusse esconduyre | mais il ne me
requert de riens | ains est tant melencolieux que mei-
ueilles" "Dame," fait gallehault, "auez en mercy, il
est celluy qui vous ayme plus que soy mesmes Si
maist dieu, ie ne scauoye riens de sa volente quant il
vint, fois quil doubtoit de estre congneu, ne oncques
plus ne men descourrit" "Je en auray," fait elle,
"telle mercy comme vous voudrez" "Dame, vous
auez fait ce que ie vous ay iequis, aussi doy ie bien
faire ce que vous me requerez" Se dit la royne, "il ne
me requert de riens" "Certes, dame," fait gallehault,
"il ne ose | car len ne aymera ia riens par amours que
len ne craigne | mais ie vous en prie pour luy, & se ie
ne vous en priasse, si le deussiez vous pourchasser Car
plus riche tresor ne pourriez vous conquerir" "Certes,"

fait elle, "ie le scay bien et ie en feray tout ce que vous commanderez" "Dame," fait Gallehault, "grant mercy Je vous prie que vous luy donnez vostre amour, et le retenez pour vostre cheualhier a tousiours, et deuenez sa loyalle dame toute vostre vie | et vous le aurez fait plus riche que se vous luy auez donne tout le monde"

"Certes," faict elle, "ie luy ottroye que il soyt mien | et moy toute sienne, et que par vous soyent amendez tous les meffaitz" "Dame," faict Gallehault, "grant mercy Or conuient il commencement de seruice,"

"Vous ne deuserez riens," fait la royne, "que ie ne face" "Dame," faict il, "grant mercy | donc baisez le deuant moy pour commencement de vrayes amours"

"Du baiser," faict elle, "ie ne voy ne lieu ne temps | et ne doubtez pas," faict elle, "que ie ne le voulsisse faire aussi voullentiers quil feroit | mais ces dames sont cy qui moult se merueillent que nous auons tant fait, si ne pourroyt estre que ilz ne le vissent Nompourtant, se il veult, ie le baisera voullentiers" Et il en est si ioyeux que il ne peult respondre si non tant quil dict

"Dame," faict il, "grant mercy" | "dame," faict Gallehault, "de son vouloir nen doubtez ia | Car il est tout vostre, bien le sachez, ne ia nul ne sen apperceuera, Nous troyz serons ensemble ainsi comme se nous conseillions" | "Dequoy me feroye ie pryer" | faict elle |

"plus le vueil ie que vous" Lors se trayent a part, et font semblant de conseiller La Roynie voyt que le cheualhier nen ose plus faire, si le prent par le menton, et baise deuant Gallehault assez longuement Et la dame de Mallehault (*sic*) sceut de vray que elle le baisoyt Lors parla la Roynie qui moult estoit sage & vaillant dame "Beau doulx amy," faict elle, "tant auez faict que ie suys vostre, Et moult en ay grant ioye Or gardez que la chose soyt celee Car mestier en est Je suys une des Dames du monde dont len a greigneur bien dict, Et se ma renommee empiroyt par vous, il y auroyt layde amour et villaine | et vous, Gallehault, ie vous pryé que mon honneur gardez | Car vous estes le plus sage | Et se mal men venoyt, ce ne seroyt si non par vous, Et se ien ay bien et ioye, vous me lauez donnee" "Dame," faict Gallehault, "il ne pourroyt vers vous mesprendre, et ien ay bien faict ce que vous me commandastes Or vous pryé que faciez ma volente ainsi comme iay fait la vostre," "Dictes,"

faict elle, "tout ce quil vous plaira hardyement | car vous ne me scaurez chose commander que ie ne face" "Dame," faict il, "donc mauez vous ottroye que ie

Then I will
grant it says
Queen Guinevere
Gaiot prays her
to give Lancelot
her love and be
come his loyal
lady all her life

She promises to
be Lancelot's

and that she will
do everything she
is told

Then kiss L'n-
celot before me
says Gaiot

This Guinevere
agrees to do it
Lancelot wishes
it

Gaiot says there
is no doubt about
Lancelot's wish

and as he is bash-
ful, the Queen
takes him by the
chin, and kisses
him before Gai-
ot (The Lady
of Mallehault
sees her)

Guinevere tells
Lancelot that she
is his but charges
him to keep the
matter secret,

and Gaiot too

Gaiot promises
this

and asks Guine
vere to make
Lancelot his com-
punion for ever

She takes Lance-
lot's hand gives
him to Galiot

and says she has
given him Lan-
celot of the Lake,
son of King Ban

This gives Galiot
more joy than
ever he had be-
fore as he had
often heard how
Lancelot was the
gallantest knight
in the world

By the bright
moonlight
they recross the
meads towards
Lancelot's tent

and Galiot sends
Lancelot there
while he conducts
the Queen to Ar-
thur's tent,

and tells him they
have only been
looking at the
fields by them-
selves

Galiot sees the
Queen to her
tower

and then takes
leave of Arthur
and of Gawain

and goes to Lan-
celot's bed

seray son compaignon a tousiours " Certes," fait elle,
" se de ce vous failloit, vous auriez mal employe la peine
que vous avez prinse pour luy et pour moy " Lors
prenent le cheualier par la main, et dict " Gallehault,
ie vous donne ce cheualier a tousiours sans ce que iay
auant eu, et vous le me creancez ainsi " | et aussi le
cheualier luy creance | " scauez vous," fait elle, " Galle-
hault, que ie vous ay donne lancloot du lac, le filz au
roy ban de benoic," Ainsi luy a fait le cheualier cong-
noistre, qui moult en a grant honte Lors a gallehault
greigneure ioye quil neust onques | car il auoit main-
tesfois ouy dire, comme parolles vont, que cestoyt le
meilleur cheualier et le plus preux du monde, et bien
scauoit que le roy ban auoit este moult gentil homme,
et moult puissant de amys et de terre

Ainsi fut faicte la premiere acointance de la royne
et de lancelot par gallehault | et Gallehault ne
lauoit onques congneu que de veue, et pource luy fait
creancer quil ne luy demanderoit son nom tant quil luy
dist, ou autre pour luy Lors se leuerent tous troyz, et
il anuytoit durement Mais la lune estoyt luee, si
faisoit cler | Si que elle luysoyt par toute la praerie |
Lors sen retournerent a vne part contremment les piez
droit vers le tref le cheualier, & le seneschal et galle-
hault vint apres luy & les dames tant quilz vindrent
endroit les tentes de gallehault Lors enuoya Galle-
hault son compaignon a son tref, et prent conge de la
royne, et gallehault la conuoya iusques au tref du Roy
Et quant le roy les veyt, si demanda dont ilz venoyent
" Sire," fait Gallehault, " nous uenons de veoir ces pres
a si peu de compaignie comment vous veez " Lois se
assient, et parlent de plusieurs choses, si sont la Royne
et Gallehault moult ayses

A V chef de piece se leua la royne, et sen alla en la
bretesche, gallehault la conuoya iusques la
Puis la commande a dieu, et dist quil sen yroit gesir
auec son compaignon " Bien auez fait," dit la royne,
" il en sera plus aise " | A tant sen part gallehault, et
vient au roy prendre congie, et dist quil ne luy des-
plaise, et que il yra gesir auec les gens pource quil ny
auoyt geu de grant piece, et dist " Sire, ie me doibz
pener de faire leur volente | car ilz me ayment moult "
" Sire," fait messire gauvain, " vous dictes bien, et len
doit bien honnorer telz preudhommes qui les a " Lors
sen part gallehault et vient a son compaignon, Ilz se
coucherent tous deux en vng lict, et deviserent la une
piece Si nous laisserons ores a parler de gallehault &

de son compaignon, et dirons de la royne qui est venu en la bretesche

Quant gallehault fut party, la royne sen alla en vne fenestre, et commence a penser a ce que plus luy plaisoyt La dame de mallehault saprocha delle quant elle la vit seulle, et luy dist le plus priueement que elle peut "Haa, dame! pourquoy ne est bonne la compaignie de quatre?" La royne le ouyst bien, si ne dit mot, et fait semblant que niens nen ouyt Et ne demoura gueres que la dame dist celle parolle mesmes, la royne lapella et dist "Dame, pourquoy auez ce dit?" "Dame," fait elle, "pardonnez moi, ie nen diray ores plus | car par aduventure en ay plus dit que a moy nappartient | & len ne se doit mi faire plus priuee de sa dame que len est | car tost en acquiert on hayne" "Si maist dieu," fait la royne, "vous ne me pourriez riens dire dont vous eussiez ma haine | ie vous tiens tant a saige et a courtoyse, que vous ne diriez niens qui fust encontre ma volente | Mais dictes hardyement | Car ie le vueil, et si vous en prie" "Dame," fait elle, "donc le vous diray ie | Je dy que moult est bonne la compaignie de quatre, Jay huy veu nouveau accointement que vous auez fait au cheuallier qui parla a vous la bas en ce vergier Et scay bien que cest la personne du monde qui plus vous ayme, et vous ne auez pas tort se vous laymez | car vous ne pourriez vostre amour mieulx employer," "Comment," fait la royne, "le congnoissez vous?" "Dame," fait elle, "telle heure a este ouen que ie vous en eusse bien peu faire refus comme vous en pouez ores faire a moy | car ie lay tenu vng an et demy en prison Cest celluy qui vainquit lassemblee aux armes vermeilles | & celle de deuant hier aux armes noires, les vnes & les autres luy baillay ie, Et quant il fut auant hier sui la ruiere pensif, et ie luy voulu mander que il fist vaillamment armes, ie ne le faisoie sinon pour ce que ie esperoye quil vous aymast, si cuydoye telle heure fust que il me aymast | Mais il me mist tost hors de cuyder, tant me descouurit de son penser" Lors luy compta comment elle lauoyt tenu en prison an et demy | et pourquoy elle lauoyt prins "Or me dictes," fait la royne, "quelle compaignie vault mieulx de quatre que de troys | car mieulx est vne chose celee par trois que par quatre" "Certes non est cy endroit, et si vous diray Vray est que le cheualier vous ayme, et aussi fait il gallehault, et desor mais se conforteront lung lautre en quelque terre quilz soient Car icy ne seront ilz pas longuement et vous

Queen Guinevere goes to the window to think

and the Lady of Mallehault asks her why four are bad company

At first Guinevere will not hear this but the Lady repeats it, the Queen asks why she says it and the Lady asks pardon as perhaps she has said too much

'No says Guinevere

'speak boldly out, I wish it

'Then I must say that I think four very good company I saw the new acquaintance you made to day and know he is the man who loves you most in the world

I kept him a year and a half in prison and gave him both the red and the black arms in which he won the tourneys,

and I thought then that he loved me but he soon undeceived me

The Queen answers 'But tell me why four are better company than three'

Because though your knight loves you he loves Galiof too and they will not stay here

long but you will,
and if you have
no one else to tell
your thought to,
you will be forced
to keep your faith
to yourself, but
if you will let me
be a fourth
we can comfort
one another

Queen Guinevere
agrees to this
with great joy,

and tells the Lady
that the knight is
Lancelot of the
Lake

At night the
ladies sleep to-
gether,

and talk of their
new loves,

the Lady of Mal-
lehault saying
that she never
loved but one
and then only in
thought (and
that was Lance-
lot)

The Queen thinks
she will make the
Lady and Gaiot
fall in love with
one another

Next morning
they go to Ar-
thur's tent
and wake him,
and then return
over the mea-
dows

demourerez cy toute seule, et ne le scaura nul fors
vous | ne si ne auez a qui descouuoir vostre pensee, si
porterez ainsi vostre faix toute seule | mais sil vous
pleust que ie fusse la quarte en la compaignie entre nous
deux dames, nous solacierons ainsi comme entre eulx
deux cheualiers feront, si en seriez plus aise " Scauez
vous," fait la royne, "qui est le cheualier?" "Se
maist dieu," fait la dame, "nenny" "Vous auez bien
ouy comment il se couurit vers moy" "Certes," faict
la royne, "moult estes apperceuante, et moult conuen-
droit estre sage qui vous vouldroit rien embler, & puis
que ainsi est que vous lauez aperceu, et que vous me
requerez la compaignie, vous laurez | mais ie vueil que
vous portez vostre faix ainsi comme ie feray le mien"
"Dame," faict elle, "ie feray ce que il vous plaira, pour
ci haulte compaignie auoir" "En verite," faict la royne,
"vous laurez | car meilleure compaignie que vous ne
pourroye ie mye auoir" "Dame," fait elle, "nous
serons ensemble toutes les heures quil vous plaira"
"Jen suys ioyeuse," faict la Royne "Et nous affer-
merons demain la compaignie de nous quatre" Lors
luy compte de Lancelot, comment il auoyt ploure quant
il regarda deuers elle, "et ie scay que il vous congneut,
et sachez que cest lancelot du lac, le meilleur cheualier
qui viue" Ainsi parlerent longuement entre elles
deux | et font moult grant ioye de leur accointement
nouveau Icele nuyct ne souffrit oncques la Royne de
logres que la dame de mallehault geust sinon avec elle |
mais elle y geut a force Car elle doubtoyt moult de
gesir avec si riche dame, Quant elles furent couchees si
commencerent a parler de leurs nouvelles amours, La
royne demanda a la dame de mallehault selle a[y]me
nulluy par amours, et elle luy dict que nenny "Sachez,
dame, que ie naymay oncques que vne fois, ne de celle
amour ne fis ie que penser," et ce dit elle de lancelot,
quelle auoit tant ayme comme femme pourroit aymer
homme mortel | Mais elle nen auoit oncques aultre ioye
eue, non pourtant ne dit pas que ce eust il este La
royne pensa quelle feroyt ses amours de elle et de galle-
hault, mais elle nen veult parler iusques a tant quelle
scaura de gallehault sil la veult aymer ou non | car
autrement ne len requerroit elle pas Lendemain se
leuerent matin elles deux, & allerent au tref du roy, qui
gisoit la pour faire a monseigneur gauvain et aux aultres
cheualiers compaignie La royne sesueilla, & dist, "que
moult estoit mauuais qui a ceste heure dormoyt" Lors
se tournerent contreal les prez, et dames et damoyelles

avec elles Et ils allerent la ou l'acointement damours where the meet-
 auoyt este fait, et dict la Royne a la dame de mallehault ing with Lancelot
 toute l'acointance de lancelot | et comme il estoit took place
 esbahy deuant elle, et riens ne luy laissa a dire and the Queen
 commença a louer gallehault, et dit que cestoit le plus tells the Lady of
 saige homme et le plus vertueux du monde, " Certes," Mallehault all
 fait elle, " ie luy compteray l'acointance de nous deux about it
 quant il viendra, et sachez que il en aura grant ioye and then praises
 Or allons | car il ne demourra gueres quil ne viengne " Galhot as the
 wisest and best
 man in the world

The rubric of the next chapter is as follows

¶ Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de gallehault et de la dame de malehault par le moyen de la royne de logres Et comment lancelot & gallehault sen alloient esbatre et deuser avec leurs dames

How Galhot be-
 came acquainted
 with the Lady of
 Melyhault

It relates how Queen Guinevere requires Galhot to let her dispose of his love as he had disposed of hers To this he consents, and she commends him to the Lady of Mallehault Next, they arrange for the promised *parlement de eulx quatre*, and the queen points out to Lancelot the lady who had so many a day kept him in prison, i e, the Lady of Mallehault At recognizing his old acquaintance, Lancelot feels somewhat distressed, but is reassured by observing the new love-making between her and Galhot Seated in a wood, the four "demourerent grant piece, ne oncques ne tindrent parolles, fors tant seullement de accoller & de baisser comme ceulx qui volentiers le faisoient "

We next hear of Gawain's recovery, and of the separation of the party of four above spoken of Galhot takes Lancelot home with him to his own country, whilst the Lady of Mallehault remains for a time with the queen and Arthur When Lancelot is next spoken of, he is in Galhot's country, where we will now leave him

NOTES TO THE APPENDIX

P xxiii *Descosse* = *d'Écosse*, of Scotland In Old French, words are frequently run together, thus we have *labbaye* for *l'abbaye*, *sesmeuent* for *s'emeuent*, etc Also the letter *s* is often replaced in modern French by an acute or circumflex accent, so that *Escosse* = *Écosse*, *chasteau* = *château*, etc The word *si* often occurs below with a great variety of meanings, *vi'* I, he, and, also, so, thus, etc

P xxiv *baillie*, given, entrusted *brouyn* (*brûler*), being burnt *monstier*, monastery *garues*, so in the original throughout, *garues* is used in other romances

P xxv *avecques* = *avec*, with

P xxvi *adurison*, vision *behoudys*, tournament *nawe*, wounded *deffera* = *desferia*, unironed, it means that Lancelot drew the weapons out of the knight's wounds *deuers*, "Preposition relative au temps et au lieu dont on parle, près, vers, contre, proche, de *versus*" Roquefort *octroya*, permitted (authorized) *mouille*, *lit* wetted, insulted

P xxvii *veurent*, saw *escript* (*écrit*), written *l'assemblée*, the gathering, *i e* the war, strife *rua*, overthrew

P xxviii *mire*, physician *gue*, ford, pass *tresues*, a truce, spelt *treues* on p xxix

P xxix *esbatre*, to divert oneself In modern French, *s'abattre*

P xxx *orrions*, shall hear *deust* = *dût* *cheoient*, from *cheoir*, to fall Compare *châte* *pouiz*, hairs *esbahy*, amazed *ortelz*, toes *chaille*, from *chalon*, to be anxious about *dilacion*, delay

P xxxi *paour*, fear. *mire*, physician *veufue*, old

P xxxii *cheuauche*, rides *boutte*, buts, pushes *recte* (*jete*), cast *cuyde*, I believe *Si maist dieu*, so God aid me Here *maist* is put for *maist* *oncques*, ever *ennuyt*, this night, to night, *lottoyerà*, will grant him his request *conroy*, troops

P xxxiii *derrains* (*derniers*), last *busmes*, trumpets Or *y perra*, now it will appear *cudout*, believed, from the old verb *quider* *cheuauchent*, ride *ia*, already *tertre*, a small hill

P xxxiv *adresse*, a cross path *huy*, just before, *lit* this day
Lat *hodè* *se pasme*, swoons *leuns*, thither

P xxxv *ores*, now *huy*, to-day *preudhomme*, a wise and
prudent man *lottroye*, permits him *trej*, tent *nenny*, no! *uns*,
before *guerprount*, will leave *deduys*, amusements, diversions

P xxxvi *leans*, there *gerie*, will lie *las*, tired *Ains*, but

P xxxvii *semondray*, shall ask *esbahy*, amazed *toller*, take
away *creanca*, promised *lees*, wide, full *lices*, lists

P xxxviii *emmy le pas*, in the midst of the passage *huchu*, to
cry aloud

P xxxix *heue*, lifts *saisine*, disposal *enseignes*, tokens
ancoys, first of all

P xl *oncques mes*, never *a resiouyr* (*réjour*), in amusing
escondroye, will refuse *me poyse*, it troubles me *peca*, long ago
se embronche, covers his face

P xli *sen esueillerent*, awoke thereat *Adonc*, then *riens for
fait*, anyway injured

P xlii *ne me mescreer mye que*, do not doubt me more than

P xliii *dont*, gives, were to give

P xliv *mesgrie*, properly the *suite* or household of a prince, see
Roquesfort s v *magne* and *margnee nef*, a boat *loue*, advise

P xlv *vous esmuyer*, afflict yourself *courrouce*, wroth, dis
pleased

P xlvi *verger*, orchard *aval*, below *se embroncha*, she veiled
herself, or, hid herself *iouste*, beside

P xlvii *maintes*, many *ot*, heard *ten prise meula*, esteemed
it better *loe*, praises *deffera*, dis ironed, drew the weapons out
of *lestref*, the stirrup

P xlviii *leans* (*la dedans*), there *belf* We find in Cotgrave's
French Dictionary, "*Belic*, a kind of red or geueles, in Blazon "
enseignes, tokens, message

P xlix *mestier*, serviceable *dillec*, thence *pouneant*, for
nothing, in vain *voire*, truly *commanday a dieu*, commended to
God, bade farewell

P li *mestier en est*, there is need of it *greigneur bien*, exceed-
ingly well, very highly

P lii *greigneure*, greater *anuytort*, became night *ie me doibr
pener*, I ought to take pains

P liii *ouen*, this year

The Romans

of

Lancelot of the Laik.

[PROLOGUE]

<p>THe soft morow ande The lustee Aperill, The wynter set, the stormys in exill, Quhen that the brycht <i>and</i> fresch illumynare Upryith arly in his fyre chare His hot courß in to the orient, And frome <i>his</i> spere his goldine firemis sent Wpone the grond, in maner off mesag, One <i>euery</i> thing to valkyne thar curage, That natur haith set wnder hire mycht, Boith gyrß, and flour, <i>and</i> euery lufy vicht And namly thame that felith the affay Of lufe, to schew the kalendis of may, Throw birdis fonge <i>with</i> opine wox one hy, That feffit not one lufar's for to cry, Left thai forþhet, throw flewth of Ignorans, The old wface of lowis obferuans And frome I can the bricht face aspy, It deuit me no langare fore to ly,</p>	<div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>[Fol. 1.] In April when the fresh lumi nary upriseth</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>4</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>and sendeth from his sphere his golden streams</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>8</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>12</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>16</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>and when I espy his bright face,</p> </div>
---	---

I walk forth, be wailing my sad life	Nore that loue schuld fleuth In to me finde, Bot walkine suith, bewalinge in my mynde The dredful lyve endurit al to longe, Sufferans in loue of forouful harmys stronge, The scharpe daies and the hewy jerys, Quhill phebus thus huth passith al his speis, Vithoutine hope oie traufinge of comfort , So be such meime fatit was my sort Thus in my faull Rolinge al my wo,	20
The sword of love caues my heart	My carful hart carwing can In two The derdful fuerd of lowis hot diffire , So be the morow set I was a-fyre In felinge of the accerß hot and colde, That haith my hart in sich a fevu holde, Only to me thare was noie vthin esß Bot thinkine qhow I schulde my lady plesß The scharp assay and ek the Inw urt pame Of dowblit wo me neulyngs can confitrein, Quhen that I have remembrit one my thocht	28
My lady knoweth not how I am wo begone [Fol 1 b]	How sche, quhois bewte al my harm haith wrocht, Ne knouth not how I ame wo begone, Nor how that I ame of hue feruandis one , And in my self I can nocht fynde the meyne In to quhat wyß I fal my wo compleine	32
I walked thus in the feild, and came to a well beseen garden	Thus in the feild I walkith to and floo, As thochtful wicht that felt of nocht bot woo, Syne to o gardinge, that wesß weil beseß, Of quiche the feild was al depaynt with greß The tendyre and the lusty flouris new Up thröue the greß vpone thar stalkis grew Aghane the sone, and thare levis spred, Quharwith that al the gardinge was I cledè , That pryapus, in to his tyme before, In o lustear walkith nevir more ,	40
It was closely environed with leaves	And al about enweronyt and icloßit One sich o wyß, that none withun supposit	44
		52

- Foie to be feñ *wit*h ony vicht thare owt ,
 So dide the levis clof it¹ all about 56
 Thar was the flour, thar was the queñ alpheft,²
Rycht wereng being of the *nychtis* rest,
 Wnclofing gañe the crownel for the day ,
 The *brycht* sone illumynit haith the spray, 60 The sun illumina
 ed the sprays
 The *nychtis* fobur ande the most schowris,
 As cristoll terys *wit*thhong vpone the flouris,
 Haith vpwarpiþ In the lufy aire,
 The morow makith soft, ameyne, and faire , 64
 And the byrdis thar mychty voce out throng,
 Quhill al the wood refonnte of thar fonge,
 That gret confort till ony vicht It wer
 That pleñith thame of lustenes to here 68
 Bot gladnes til the thochtful, euer mo
 The more he feith, the more he haith of wo
 Thar was the garding *wit*th the flouris ourfret,
 Quich is in pofy fore my lady set, 72 the garden was
 adorned with
 flowers
 That hire Represent to me oft befor,
 And thane also , thus al day gan be for³
 Of thocht my goft *wit*th torment occupy,
 That I becamē In to one exafy, 76 [Tol 2]
 I fell there into
 an ecstacy or
 sleep
 Ore flep, or how I wot , bot fo befell
 My wo haith done my livis goft expell,
 And in fch wif weil long I can endwr,
 So me betid o wondir aventur 80
 As I thus lay, *Rycht* to my fpreit vas feñ
 A birde, yat was as ony lawrare greñ,
 A licht, and fayth in to hir birdes chere ,
 " O woful wrech, that levis in to were " 84
 To fchew the thus the god of loue me fent,
 That of thi *feruice* no thing is content,
 For in his court yhoue lewith in diffpar,
 And vilfully sustenis al thi care, 88 "The God of
 Love is discon
 tent with thee

¹ MS "cloft"² May we read "alcest" ?³ MS "befor"

	And fchapith no thinge of thine awn remede, Bot clepith ay and cryith apone dede Yhow callith the birdis be morow fro thar bouris, Yhoue dewith both the erbis and the flouris, 92 And clepit hyme vnfaithful king of lowe, Yow dewith hyme in to his rigne abuse, Yhow tempith hyme, yhoue doith thi self no gud,
You are destitute of wit	Yhoue are o mon of wit al destitute 96 Wot yhoue nocht that al liwis creatwre Haith of thi wo in to his hand the cwre?
Though you call on trees your lady hears not	And fet yhoue clep one erbis and one treis, Sche heris not thi wo, nore 3hit fche feis , 100 For none may know the dirkneß of thi thocht, Ne blamyth her thi wo fche knowith nocht And It is weil accordinge It be so He suffir harme, that to redref his wo 104 Previdith not , for long ore he be sonde, Holl of his leich, that fchewith not his vound
Ovid says it is better to shew, than to conceal love	And of ovid ye autor schall yhow knaw Of lufe that feth, for to consel or fchow, 108 The last he clepith althur-best of two , And that is futh, and fal be euer mo And loue also haith chargit me to fay,
[Fol 2 b]	Set yhoue prefume, ore beleif, ye affay 112 Of his seruice, as It wil ryne ore go, Prefwme It not, fore It wil not be so , Al magre thine a seruand schal yow bee
As touching thine adversity, seek the remedy	And as tueching thine aduerfyttee, 116 Complen and sek of the ramed, the cwre, Ore, gif yhow likith, furth thi wo endure " And, as me thocht, I anfuerde azamie
Then answered I	Thus to the byrde, in wordis fchort and plane 120 " It ganyth not, as I have harde Recorde, The seruand for to difput with ye lord , Bot well he knowith of al my vo the quhy, And in quhat wyß he hath me fet, quhar I 124

- Nore may I not, nore can I not attane,
 Nore to hir hienes dare I not complane ”
 “ Ful ! ” quod the bird, “ lat be thi nyß dißpare,
 For in this erth no lady is fo fare, 128 ‘ Fool said the
bird, despair
not,
 So hie estat, nore of fo gret empruß,
 That in hire felf haith vidome ore gentrice,
 Yf that o wicht, that worthy is to be
 Of lovis court, fchew til hir that he 132
 Seruith hire in lovis hartly wyß,
 That fchall thar for hyme hating or dißpüß
 The god of love thus chargit the, at fchort,
 That to thi lady yhoue thi wo Report , 136 the God of Love
charges thee to
speak out your
love or else to
write thy plaint
 Yf yhoue may not, thi plant fchall yhov vrit
 Se, as yhoue cane, be maner oft endit
 In metir, quühich that no man haith fuffipek,
 Set oft tyme thai contenyng gret effecc , 140
 Thus one fume wyß yhow fchal thi wo dwelar
 And, for thir fedulis and thir billis are
 So geneß all, and ek fo fchort at lyte,
 And fwme of thaim is loft the appetit, 144
 Sum trety fchall yhoue for yi lady fak,
 That wnkouth is, als tak one hand and mak, write, then, some
treatise for her to
read
 Of love, ore armys, or of fum othir thing,
 That may hir one to thi Remembryng brynge , 148
 Qwich foundith Not one to no hewynes,
 Bot one to gladneß and to luftenenß,
 That yhoue belevis may thi lady plesß,
 To have hir thonk and be one to hir esß, 152 one that may
please her and
get her thanks
 That fche may wit in feruice yhow art one
 Faure wel,” quod fche, “ thus fchal yhow the dißpone, Farewell and be
merry
 And mak thi felf als mery as yhoue may,
 It helpith not thus fore to wex al way ” 156
 Witß that, the bird fche haith hir leif tak,
 For fere of quich I can onone to wak ,
 Sche was ago, and to my felf thocht I
 Quhat may yis meyne ? quhat may this signify ? 160 Thereon I awoke
and wondered
what it might
mean

- Is It of troucht, or of Illusioun^e ?
 Bot finaly, as in conclusioun^e,
 Be as be may, I schal me not discharge,
 Sen It apperith be of lovis charg^e , 164
 And ek myne hart none othir buffynes
 Haith bot my ladice *seruice*, as I ges^t ,
 Among al vtheris I schal one honde tak
 This litl occupatioun^e for hire sak 168
 Bot hyme I pray, the mychty gode of loue,
 That sitith hie in to his spir abuf,
 (At *command* of o wyf quhois visioun^e
 My goft haith takin this opvnioun^e.) 172
 That my lawboure may to my lady ple^s
 And do wnto hir ladeschip *fum es*,
 So that my *travell* be *nocht* tynt, and I
 Quhat vtheris say setith nothing by 176
 For wel I know that, be this worldis fame,
 It schal not be bot hurting to my name,
 Quhen that thai here my febil negligens,
 That empit is, and bare of eloquens, 180
 Of discressioun^e, and ek of Retoryk ,
 The metre and the curving both elyk
 So fere discording frome *perfeccioun^e* ,
 Quhilk I submyt to the correccioun^e 184
 Of *yam* the quhich that is discret *and* wyf,
 And enterit is of loue in the *seruice* ,
 [Fol 3 b] Quhich knouyth that no lovare dare *witthistonde*,
 Quhat loue hyme chargit he mot tak one honde, 188
 Deith, or defam, or ony maner wo ,
 And at this tyme *witth* me It stant rycht so,
 As I that dar makine no demande
 To quhat I wot It lykith loue *commande* 192
 Tueching his chargis, as *witth* al destitut,
Witthin my mynd schortly I conclud
 For to fulfyll, for ned I mot do so
 Thane in my *thocht* rolling to and fro 196

I determined to
take in hand this
occupation

I know it will but
hurt my name
when men hear
my feeble negli-
gence

I submit my
poem to the cor-
rection of the
wise

for I dare not
oppose I ove s
command

- Quhare that I my~~ht~~ *fum* wnkouth mater fynde,
 Quhill at ye laft it fell in to my mynd
 Of o ftory, that I befor had fene,
 That both of loue and armys can conteñ,
 Was of o knyght clepit lancelot of ye laik,
 The fone of bane was, king of albanak ,
 Of quhois fame *and* worchipful dedis
 Clerkis in to druer~~d~~ bukis redis,
 Of quhome I thynk her *fum* thing for to writ
 At lous charge, and as I cane, endit ,
 Set men tharin fal by experiens
 Know my confait, and al my negligens
 Bot for that ftory is fo pafing larg,
 One to my wit It war fo gret o charg
 For to tranflat the romans of that knyght ,
 It paffith fare my cunyng and my mycht,
 Myne Ignorans may It not comprehende ,
 Quharfor thare one I wil me not depend
 How he was borne, nor how his fader deid
 And ek his moder, nore how he was denyed
 Efter thare deth, prefumyng he was ded,
 Of al ye lond, nore how he fra that ftede
 In sacret wy~~d~~ wnwyt away was tak,
 And nwrift with ye lady of ye lak
 Nor, in his youth, think I not to tell
 The auentouris, quhich to hyme befell ,
 Nor how the lady of the laik hyme had
 One to the court, quhare that he knyght was mad ,
 None wift his nome, nore how that he was tak
 By loue, and was Iwondit to the ftak,
 And throuch *and* throuch perfitt to ye hart,
 That al his tyme he cou~~th~~ It not aftart ,
 For thare of loue he enterit in *fer*uice,
 Of wanore throuch the beute and franchis,
 Throuch quhois *fer* uice in armys he has vrocht
 Mony wonderis, and perellis he has socht

At last I thought
of the story of
Lancelot of the
Lake,

of whom I here
think to write
something

But because my
ignorance cannot
comprehend the
French romance

I shall not tell
how he was born

nor how he was
nourished by the
Lady of the Lake

nor how he was
brought to Ar
thur s court

[Fol 4]

and pierced to the
heart by the
beauty of Wanore
(Guinevere)

for whose service
he wrought many
wonders ,

	Nor how he thor, in to his 3oung euage,	
nor how he made a vow to revenge a wounded knight	Hath maid awoue, and in to lous rage, In the rewenging of o wondit knyght That cumyne was in to the court that nycht,	236
who had a broken sword in his head, and a truncheon of a broken spear in his body,	In to his hed a brokin ¹ fuerd had he, And in his body also mycht men see The tronfione of o brokine sper that was, Quhich no man out dedenynt to aras ,	240
	Nor how he haith the wapnis out tak, And his awow apone this wis can mak, That he schuld hyme Reweng at his poware One euery knyght that louth the hurtare	244
	Better thane hyme, the quhich that vas Iwond Throw quich awoue in armys hath ben founde The deth of mony wereoure ful wicht, ²	248
a vow which caused the death of many a wight warrior	For, fro tho wow was knowing of the knyght, Thare was ful mony o pafage in the londe By men of armys kepit to withtond This knyght, of quhome thai ben al set afyre Thaim to reweng in armys of desin	252
or how he and Sir Kay were sent to defend the lady of Nohalt,	Nor how that thane incontynent was fend He and sir kay togidder to defend The lady of nohalt, nor how that hee Gouernit hyme thare, nore in quhat degre	256
or how he con- quered the Sor- rowful Castle,	Nor how the gret pasing vaffolag He escheut, thrōue the outragous curag, In conquyrng of the sorowful castell. Nor how he passith doune in the causis fell,	260
[Fol 4b] or how he resoued Sir Gawane and his nine fellows,	And furth ye keys of Inchantment brocht, That al distroyt quhich that thare vas vroccht Nore howe that he reikewit sir gawane, With his ix falous in to presone tane ,	264
	Nore mony vthre driueris aduenture, Quhich to report I tak not in my cwre,	

¹ MS "abrokin"² The MS wrongly transposes ll 247 and 248

- Nor mony affemblay that gawane gart be maid
 To wit his name, nor how that he hyme hade
 Wnswift, and hath the worchip *and* emprif, 268
 Nor of the knyghts in to mony,¹ diuerß wyß
 Throuch his awoue that hath thare dethis found,
 Nor of the sufferans that by lous wounde 272
 He in his trawel sufferenth auer more,
 Nor in the quenis *presens* how tharfor
 By camelot, in to that gret Revare,
 He was ner dround I wil It not declare 276
 How that he was in lous hewy thoct
 By dagenet in to the court I-brocht,
 Nor how the knyght that tyme he came *perfew*,
 Nor of the gyants by camelot he flew, 280
 Nor wil I not her tell the *maner* how
 He flew o knyght, by *natur* of his wow,
 Off melyholt, nore how in to that toune
 Thar came one hyme o gret confusione 284
 Of pupil *and* [of] knyghts, al enarmyt,
 Nor how he thar haith kept hyme wnharmyt,
 Nor of his worchip, nor of his gret prowes,
 Nor his defens of armys in the pres 288
 Nor how the lady of melyhalt yat sche
 Came to the feild, and pray[i]th hyme that he
 As to o lady to hir² his fuerd hath zold,
 Nor how he was in to hir keping hold, 292
 And mony vthr nobil deid alfo
 I wil report quharfor I lat ourgo
 For quho thaim lykith for to specyfy,
 Of one of thaim mycht mak o gret fstory, 296
 Nor thing I not of his hye renown
 My febil wit to makin menfioune,
 Bot of the weris that was scharp *and* strong,
 Richt *perellouß*, and hath enduryt long, 300

nor of the many
 'assemblies Ga
 wane held to find
 out his name,

nor of his suffer
 ing caused by
 love's wound

nor how he was
 nearly drowned
 at Camelot

nor how he was
 brought to court
 by Dagenet

nor of the giants
 he slew at Came-
 lot

nor how he slew
 a knight of Mely
 holt,

and there de
 fended himself
 against a crowd,

wherempon the
 lady of Melyhalt
 prayed him to
 yield his sword
 to her and kept
 him in her power

Whoever likes,
 might make of
 these things a
 long story

But I think to
 tell of the wars
 between Arthur
 and Galiot

¹ We should perhaps omit "mony"

² MS "his"

[Fol 5]	Of Arthur In defending of his lond Frome galot, fone of the fair gyonde, That brocht of knyghtis o paining confluens ,	
wherein Lancelot won renown by his defence of Arthur	And how lancelot of arthuris hol defens And of the veris berith the renown , And how he be the wais of fortune	304
and at last made peace between the two princes	Tuex the two princis makith the accorde, Of al there mortall weris to concorde ,	308
I shall also tell how Venus re- warded him	And how that venus, siting hie abuf, Reuardith hyme of trauell in to loue, And makith hyme his ladice grace to have, And thankfully his seruice cane refave ,	312
My summary must end for the present	This is the mater quihich I think to tell Bot fial he mot ryght with the lady duell, Quhill tyme cum eft that we schal of hym speke This proces [now] mot clofine beñ and ftek ,	316
But I pray for the support of a very great poet,	And furth I wil one to my mater go Bot first I pray, and I besek also, One to the most compilour to suppart, Flour of poyetis, quhois nome I wil report	320
whose name I may not men- tion	To me nor to non vthur It accordit, In to our rymyng his nam to be recordit , For fum fuld deme It of presumpfioune,	324
for our rymyng is but derision, when his excel- lence is remem- bered	And ek our rymyng is al bot deryfioune, Quhen that remembrit is his excellens, So hie abuf that stant in reuerans Ye fresch enditing of his laiting tounge	328
The world knows his eloquence in inditing Latin,	Out throuch yis world so wid is yroung, Of eloquens, and ek of retoryk , Nor is, nor was, nore neuer berth hyme lyk,	
and none can ever gladden the world like him	This world gladith of his fuet poetry His faul I blyf conferuyt be for-ty ,	332
to him be the thanks for my success	And yf that ony lusty terme I wryt He haith the thonk yerof, and this endit	



[BOOK I]

Q uhen [that] tytán, withe his lusty heit,
Twenty daies In to the aryeit

Haith maid his courſ, and all with drierſ hewis

Aparalit haith the feldis and the bewis ,

The birdis amyde the erbis *and* the flouris,

And one the branchis, makyne gone thar bours,

And be the morow finging in ther chere

Welcum the luffy ſeffone of the ȝere

In to this tyme the worthi conqueroure

Arthure, wich had of al this worlde the floure

Of cheuelry auerding to his crown,

So pafing war his knyghtis in ienoune,

Was at carhill , and hapynnit ſo that hee

Solomyt well long in that faire cuntree

In to whilk tyme In to the court thar heire

None awenture, for wich the knyghtis weire

Anoit all at the abiding thare

For-why, beholding one the ſobir ayre

And of the tyme the pafing luſtynes,

Can ſo thir knyghtly hartis to encreſ,

That thei ſhir kay one to the king haith fende,

Befeiching hyme he wold wichſaif to wende

To camelot the Cetee, whare that thei

Ware wont to heryng of armys day be day

The king forſuth, heryng thare entent,

To thare defir, be ſchort awyſfment,

Ygrantid haith , and ſo the king proponit

And for to pas hyme one¹ the morne diſponit

Bot ſo beſell hyme [on] that nyght to meit

An aperans, the wich one to his ſpreit

336 [Fol 5b]
When Titan be-
ing in Aries had
apparelled the
fields

340 and birds began
to make their
bowers

344 king Arthur was
at Carlisle

348

His knights
hearing of no ad-
venture were an-
noyed

352

356 They therefore
sent Sir Kay to
pray the king to
go to Camelot

360

The king pro-
posed to do so on
the morrow

¹ MS "to pas one hyme one," with first "one" lightly crossed out

That night he dreamt that his hür all fell off	It femyth that of al his hed ye hore Of fallith and maid defolat , wharfore The king therof was pensyve in his mynd, That al the day he couth no resting fynde,	368
which made him delay his journey	Wich makith hyme his Iorneye to delaye And so befell apone the thrid day, The bricht fone, pasing in the west, Haith maid his courß, and al thing goith to Rest ,	372
Again he dreamt that his bowels fell out, and lay beside him [Fol 6]	The king, so as the fstory can dewyß, He thoght azeine, apone the famyne wyß, His vombe out fallith vith his houl syde Apone the ground, <i>and</i> liging hyme besid , Throw wich anon out of his slep he ftert, Abasit and adred in to his hart	376
He told the queen, who an swered No man should respect vain dreams	The wich be morow one to the qwen he told, And fhe azeine to hyme harth anfuer zolde , "To dremys, <i>for</i> , fhuld no man have Respek, For thei ben thingis weyn, of non affek " "Well," <i>quod</i> the king, "god grant It so befall !"	380
The king next shewed his dream to a clerk,	Arly he roß, and gert one to hyme call O clerk, to whome that al his hewynes Tweching his drem fhewith he exprefß,	384
who said Sir, such things tes tify nothing	Wich anfuer yaf and seith one to the kunge , "Shir, no Record lyith to fuch thing , Wharfor now, fhir, I praye yow tak no kep, Nore traust in to the vanyteis of slep , For thei are thingis that askith no credens, But causith of fum maner influens,	388
	Empriß of thoght, ore <i>superflueytee</i> , Or than fum othr <i>casualytee</i> "	392
"Yet," replied he, "I shall not leave it so	" <i>3it</i> ," <i>quod</i> the king, "I fal <i>nocht</i> leif It so ," And furth he chargit <i>mesingeris</i> to go Throgh al his Realm, <i>withouten</i> more demande, And bad them stratly at thei fhulde comande All the bißhopes, and makyng no delay The fhuld appere be the tenty day	396
He bade all the bishops and clergy come to Camelot within twenty days		400

At camelot, with al thar hol clergy
 That most expert war, for to certefye
 A mater tueching to his goft be nyght,
 The mesag goth furth with the *lettres* Right 404

The king eft fone, *wit*hin a litall fpace,
 His Iornay makith haith frome place to place,
 Whill that he cam to camelot, and there
 The clerks all, as that the chargit were, 408

He goes to Camelot and finds the clerks assembled

Affembliht war, and came to his prefens,
 Of his desir to viting the sentens
 To them that war to hyme most speciall
 Furth his entent shauyth he al hall, 412

By whos conseil, of the worthiest
 He cheifith ten, yclept for the best,
 And most expert and wiseft was supposit,
 To qwhome his drem all hail he haith discloffit, 416

He discloses all to the ten that are most expert,

The houre, the nyght, and al the *cercumftans*,
 Befichyne them that the signifycans
 Thei wald hyme shaw, that he mycht resting fynde
 Of It, the wich that occupeid his mynde 420

And one of them with ¹ al ther holl assent
 Saith, "fhure, fore to declare our entent
 Vpone this matere, ye wil ws delay
 Fore to awyfyng one to the ix day" 424

One of them asks for nine days to advise upon the matter.

The king ther-to grantith haith, bot hee
 In to o place, that ftrong was and hye,
 He clofith them, whare thei may no whare get,
 Vn to the day, the wich he to them set 428

The king complas but shuts them up in a strong place

Than goth the clerks fadly to awyð
 Of this mater, to feing in what wyð
 The kings drem thei shal best specefy
 And than the maistrs of astronomy 432

The masters of astronomy fetch their books,

The bookys longyne to ther artis set, ²
 Not was the bukys of arachell forget,

¹ MS "saith with" (with a very slight scratch through "saith")

² So in MS Read "fet"

	Of nembrot, of danyholome, thei two, Of moyfes, <i>and</i> of herynes all soo ,	436
and calculate the disposition of the planets	And feking be ther calcolacioune To fynd the planetis difpoficioune, The wich thei fond ware wonder ewill yfet The famyne nyght the king his fweuen met	440
They found the matter heavy for the king and doubted if they should tell him so	So ner the point focht thei have the thing, Thei fond It wonder hewy to the king, Of wich thing thei waryng in to were To fhew the king, for dreid of his danger	444
Being sent for,	Of ane accorde thei planly haue propomit No worde to fhow, and fo thei them difpomit The day is cumyng, and he haith fore them sent, Besichyne them to fhewing ther entent	448
they all spake, Sir we can find no evidence	Than fpak they all, and that of an accorde , "Shir, of this thing we can no thing Recorde, For we can nocht fynd in til our sciens Tweching this mater only ewydens "	452
"Ere we part quoth the king ye shall witness something	"Now," quod the king, "and be the glorus loide, Or we depart ye fhall fum thing recorde, So pas ye not, nor fo It fall not bee " "Than," quod the clerkis, "grant ws daies three "	456
[Fol 7] He grants them three days more	The wich he grantid them, and but delay, The term paffith, no thing wold the fay, Wharof the king ftondith heuy cherith, And to the clerkis his vifag fo apperith,	460
They pray for a further delay of three days	That all thei dred them of the kingis myght Than faith o clerk, "sir, as the thrid nyght Ye dremyt, fo [now] giffis ws delay The thrid tyme, and to the thrid day "	464
	By whilk tyme thei fundyng harth the ende Of this mater, als far as fhall depend To ther sciens , yit can thei not awyß To fhewing to the king be ony wyß	468
They still refuse to declare their thought	The day is cum, the king haith them befocht, But one no wyß thei wald declair ther thoght ,	

- | | | |
|--|-----|---|
| Than was he wroth in to his self and noyt,
And maid his vow that thei shal ¹ ben distroyt
His baronis he commandit to gar tak
Fyve of them one to the fir-ftak,
And vther fyue be to the gibbot tone ,
And the furth with the kingis charg ar gone | 472 | The king vows to
destroy them |
| He bad them in to secreet wys ¹ that thei
Shud do no harm, but only them affey
The clarkis, dredful of the kingis Ire,
And saw the perell of deth and of the fyre,
Fyve, as thei can, has grantit to record ,
That vther herde and ben of ther accorde ,
And al thei ben yled one to the king,
And fhew hym thus as tueching of this thing
" Shur, fen that we constrenyt ar by myght
To fhaw that wich ² we know no thing aicht ,
For thing to cum preferuith It allan
To hymne the wich is euery thing certan,
Excep the thing that til our knowleg hee
Hath ordynat of certan for to bee ,
Therfor, fhir king, we your magnificens
Beseech It turne till ws to non offens,
Nor hald was nocht as learis, thocht It fall
Not in this mater, as that we telen shal " | 476 | but secretly
charges his
knights not to
harm them |
| And that the king hath grantit them, and thei
Has chargit one, that one this wiß fall feye
" Presumyth, fhir, that we have fundyne so ,
All erdly honore ye nedis ³ moft for-go,
And them the wich ye moft affy in-tyll
Shal failye 3ow, magre of ther will ,
And thus we haue in to this matere founde " | 480 | |
| The king, quhois hart was al wyth dred ybownd,
And askit at the clerkis, if thei fynde
By there clergy, that stant in ony kynde | 484 | They yield at last
and say, |
| | 488 | |
| | 492 | " Hold us not as
liars though it
happen not as we
say |
| | 496 | |
| | 500 | You must forego
all earthly
honour
[Fol 7 b]
and those on
whom you most
rely will fail
you. |
| | 504 | |

¹ MS "that" ² MS "wich that"

^s MS "nedift," but see l 518

- The king asks if
his destiny can
be altered
- Of possibilittee, fore to reforme
His defteny, that stude in such a forme,
If in the hewyne Is preordynat
On such o wif his honor to tranflat 508
The clerkis faith, "forfuth, and we haue sene
O thing whar of, if we the trouth shal meñ,
Is so obfcure and dyrk til our clergie,
That we wat not what It shal signefye, 512
Wich causith ws we can It not furth fay "
"Yis," quod the king, "as lykith yow ye may,
For wers than this can nat be said for me "
- A master says
there is no help
but in the true
watery lion, and
in the leech and
in the flower
- Thane faith o maufur, "than futhly thus finde we, 516
Thar is no thing fal fucour nor reikew,
Your worldly honore nedis most adew,
But throuch the watrye lyone and ek fyne,
On throuch the liche and ek the wattr fyne, 520
And throuch the confeill of the flour, god wot
What this shude meñ, for mor ther-of we not "
- God knows what
this should mean
- No word the king anfuermid ayane,
For al this refone thinkith bot in weyne 524
He shawith outwart his contenans
As he therof takith no greuans,
But al the nyght it passid nat his thoght
The daus courß with ful desir he focht, 528
And furth he goith to bring his mynd in rest
With mony O knyght vn to the gret forest,
- Next day he goes
to the forest
- The rachis gon wn-copelit for the deaire,
That in the wodis makith nois and cheir 532
The knyghtis, with the grewhundis in aweit,
Secith both the planis and the streit
- The chase
- Doune goith the hart, doune goith the hynd also,
[In to the feld can rusching to and fro]¹ 536
The swift grewhund, hardy of assay,
Befor ther hedis no thing goith away

¹ A line must here be lost, but there is nothing to shew this in the MS. The inserted line is imitated from l 3293

The king of hunting takith haith his fpoit,
 And to his palace home he can Refort,
 Ayan the noon , and as that he was set
 Vith all his noble knyghtis at the met,
 So cam ther in an agit knyght, *and* hee
 Of gret efftat femyt for to bee ,
 Anarmyt all, as tho It was the gyf,

540 The king returns

[Fol 8]
 As they sit at
 meat an aged
 knight enters
 fully armed

544

And thus the king he saluſt, one this wiſ,

“Shir king, one to yow am y fende

Frome the worthieſt that in world is kend, 548

The knight s
 message is that
 king Galot bids
 Arthur to yield
 to him his king
 dom

That leuyth now of his tyme and age,

Of manhed, wiſdome, *and* of hie curag,

Galhot, ſone of the fare gyande ,

And thus, at fhort, he bidis yow your londe 552

Ye yald hyme our, *with*out Impedyment ,

Or of hyme holde, and if tribut and rent

This is my charge at fhort, whilk if youe leſt

For to fulfill, of al he haith conqueſt 556

He ſais that he moſt tendir ſhal youe hald.”

By fhort awys the king his anſuer yald ,

The king refuses

“Shir knyght, your lorde wondir hie pretendis,

When he to me ſic ſalutatioune ſendis , 560

For I as yit, in tymys that ar gone,

Held neuer lond excep of god alone,

Nore neuer thinkith til erthly lord to yef

Trybut nor rent, als long as I may leſt” 564

“Well,” quod the knyght, “ful for repentith me ,

Non may reciſt the thing the wich mone bee

To yow, ſir king, than frome my lord am I

With diffyans ſent, and be this reſone why , 568

The knight re
 plies that his
 lord bids him de
 fiance and will
 invade his land in
 a month

His purpoſe I, or this day moneth day,

With all his oft, planly to aſſay

Your lond, *with* mony manly man of were,

And helmyt knyghtis, boith with ſheld *and* ſpere , 572

not to return till
 he has conquered

And neuer thinkith to retwrn home whill

That he this lond haith conqueſt at his will ,

and he intends to possess queen Vanour	And ek vanour the quen, of whome that hee Herth report of al this world that thee In fairhed and in wertew doith excede, He bad me say he thinkis to possede "	576
Arthur returns his defiance	" Schur," <i>quod</i> the king, " your mesag me behufis Of refone and of curtafy excuff , But tueching to your lord <i>and</i> to his oft, His powar [and] his mesag and his boft, That pretendith my lond for to distroy, Thar-of as 3it tak I non anoye ,	580 584
[b ol s b]	And say your lord one my behalf, when hee Haith tone my lond, that al the world shal see That It shal be magre myne entent "	
The knight de parts lamenting Arthur s adven- turous spirit	With that the knyght, <i>wit</i> houten leif, is went, And nicht as he was pasing to the dure, He saith, " a gode ¹¹ what wykyt aduenture Apperith ! " <i>wit</i> h that his hors he nome, Two knichtis kepit, waiting his outcome The knicht is gon, the king he gan Inquere At gawan, and at other knyghtis sere,	588 592
Arthur asks Ga- wane who Galiot is	If that thei knew or euer hard recorde Of galiot, and wharof he wes lorde , And ther was non among his knyghtis all Which anfuerd o word in to the hall Than galygantynis of walys rafe,	596
Galygantynis of Wales replies,	That trauelet in druer ³ londis has, In mony knyghtly auentur haith ben , And to the king he saith, " <i>for</i> , I haue sen Galiot, which is the fareft knyght,	600
that Galiot is the tallest knight by half a foot of all he ever saw that he is wise, liberal humble	And hieft be half a fut one hycht, That euer I saw, and ek his men accordith , Hyme lakid <i>nicht</i> that to a lord recordith For visare of his ag is non than hee, And ful of larges and humylytee ,	604 608

- An hart he haith of páing hie curag,
 And is not xxxij 3er of age,
 And of his tyme mekil haith conquerit,
 Ten kingis at his *command* ar fterit
 He *with* his men fo lout is, y gef,
 That hyme to pleß is al ther besynes
 Not fay I this, *for*, in to ye entent
 That he, nor none wnder the firmament,
 Shal pouere haue ayane your maieftee,
 And or thei fhuld, this y fey for mee,
 Rather I fhall knyghtly in to feild
 Refaue my deith anarmyt wnder fheld
 This fpek y left,"—the king, ayan the morn,
 Haith varnit huntaris baith with hund *and* horne,
 And arly gan one to the forest ryd,
 With mony manly knyghtis by his fid,
 Hyme for to fport and comfort *with* the dere,
 Set contrare was the fesone of y^e yere
 His most huntynge was atte wyld bore,
 God wot a lustye cuntree was It thoore,
 In the ilk tyme ' weil long this noble king
 In to this lond haith maid his fuornynge,
 Frome the lady was send o mesinger
 Of melyhalt, wich saith one this maner,
 As that the story fhewith by recorde
 "TO yow, *for* king, as to hir foueran lorde,
 My lady hath me chargit for to fay
 How that your lond ftondith in affray,
 For galiot, fone of the fare gyande,
 Enterit Is by armys in your land,
 And fo the lond and cuntre he anoyth,
 That quhar he goith planly he distroyth,
 And makith al oberfand to his honde,
 That nocht is left wnconquest in that lond,
 Excep two castellis longing to hir cwre,
 Wich to defend the may nocht long endure
- courageous and under xxiv years of age
- 612 Ten kings obey him
- 616
- 620
- The king goes again to the chase
- 624
- He likes boar hunting best [Fol 9]
- 628
- A messenger comes from the lady of Melyhalt
- 632
- 636
- to say that Galiot has entered Arthur's land,
- 640
- and has conquered all but two castles belonging to his mistress
- 644

- Wharfor, *fw*, in wordis plan *and* fhoit,
 Ye mon difpone your folk for to support "
- The king promises not to delay and inquires the number of the foe
 " Wel," *quod* the king, " one to thi lady fay
 The neid is myne, I fall It not delay , 648
 But what folk ar thei *nemmyt* for to bee,
 That in my lond is *cumyne* in flich degree ? "
- A hundred thousand is the reply
 " An hundreth thoufand both vith fheld *and* fpere
 On hors ar armyt, al iedy for the were " 652
 " Wel," *quod* the king, " and but delay this *nycht*,
 Or than to morn as that the day is lycht,
 I fhall remuf, ther fhall no thing me mak
 Impedyment, my Iorney for to tak " 656
 Than feith his *knyghtis* al *with* one affent
- His knights advise him to wait till he has raised an army
 " Shur, that is al contrare our entent ,
 For to your folk this mater is *wnwift*,
 And ye ar here our few for to recift 660
 3one power, and youre cuntre to defende ,
 Tharfor abid, and for your folk ye send,
 That lyk a king and lyk a wemour
 Ye may futen in armys your honoure " 664
 " Now," *quod* the king, " nq langer that I 3eme
 My crowne, my fepture, nor my dyademe,
 Frome that I here, ore frome I wnderstand,
 That ther by fors be entrit in my land 668
 Men of armys, by ftrenth of vyolens,
 If that I mak abid or refydens
- He refuses to wait longer than till the morrow
 In to o place langar than o *nycht*,
 For to defend my cuntre *and* my *rycht* " 672
- [Fol 9b]
 The king that day his mefage haith furth sent
 Throuch al his realme, and fyne to ref is went
 Up goith the morow, wp goith the brycht day,
 Wp goith the sone in to his fiefh aray, 676
 Richt as he fprede his bemys frome northeft,
 The king wpraft *withouthen* more areft,
 And by his awn confel and entent
 His Iornaye tuk at fhort awyfmnt 680
- The king arises next morning without delay,

And but dulay he goth frome place to place
 Whill that he cam nere whare¹ the lady was,
 And in one plane, apone o reuer fyde,
 He lichtit doune, and ther he can abide,
 And yit *with* hyme to batell fore to go
 Vij thousand fechteris war thei, *and* no mo

684 and reaches a
plain by the river
side

This was the lady, of qwhome befor I tolde,

having only seven
thousand with
him

That lancilot haith in to hir kepinge holde, 688

Lancelot having
been imprisoned
by the lady of
Melyhalt

But for to tell his pasing hewynesse,
 His peyne, his forow, and his gret distresse
 Of presone and of loues gret suppris,

It war to long to me for to dewys 692

When he remembrth one his hewy charge
 Of loue, wharof he can hyme not discharge,
 He wepith and he forowith in his chere,

And euery nyght femyth hyme o yere 696

Gret peite was the forow that he maad,
 And to hyme-self apone this wiß he saade

laments his fate

“**Q**what haue y gult, allace¹ or qwhat deferuit?

Lancelot's la-
ment

That thus myne hart shal vondit ben *and* carwit

One by the fuord of double peine and wo? 701

My comfort and my plesans is ago,
 To me is nat that shuld me glad referuit

his pleasure is
gone

I curs the tyme of myne Natiutee,
 Whar in the heuen It ordinyd was for me,

704 he curses his
natal day

In all my lyue neuer til haue eesß,

But for to be example of disessß,

And that apperith that euery vicht may see 708

Sen thelke tyme that I had sufficians

Of age, and chargit thoghtis sufferans,

Nor neuer I continewite haith o day

With out the payne of thoghtis hard aslay,

712 he has never
spent a single
day free from
anxiety

Thus goth my youth in tempest *and* penans

¹ MS “whare that,” with slight scratch through “that”

and is now in prison [Fol 10]	And now my body is In pefone broght , But of my wo, that in Regard is noght, The wich myne hart felth euer more	716
and invokes Death	O deth, allace ! whi hath yow me forbore That of remed haith the fo long befoght !"	
	Thus neueremore he felith to compleine, This woful knyght that felth not bot peine ,	720
Thus the smart of love's sorrow pricketh him	So prekith hyme the fmert of loues fore, And euey day encreffith more and more And with this lady takine is alfo,	
He is kept by her from the exercise of knighthood	And kept whar he may no whare go To haunt knychthed, the wich he moft defirt , And, thus his hart with dowbil wo yfinte,	724
and the e we let him dwell	We lat hyme duel here with the lady ffill, Whar he haith laifere for to compleine his fyll	728
Meanwhile Galiot besieged a castle	A nd galiot in this meyne tyme he laie By ftrong myght o caftell to affay, With many engyne and diuerß was fere, For of fute folk he had a gret powere That bowis bur, and vther Inftrumentis,	732
His army had pa- vilions tents and iron wheeled chariots	And with them lede ther palzonis <i>and</i> ther tentis, With mony o ftrong chariot and cher With yrne qwhelis and barris long <i>and</i> fquwar , Well fuffit with al maner apparell That longth to o fege or to batell , Whar-with his oft was clofit al about,	736
	That of no ftrength nedith hyme to dout Whar-with his oft was clofit al about,	740
When he heard of Arthur's coming	And when he hard the cumyne of the king, And of his oft, and of his gaderyng, The wich he reput but of febil myght Ayanis hyme for to fuffen the ficht,	744
he assembled his council,	His confell holl affemblit he, but were, Ten knightis with other lordis fere, And told theme of the cumyng of the king, And afkit them there confell of that thung	748

- Hyme thoght that it his worchip wold degrade,
 If he hyme felf in *propur perfone* raide
 Enarmyt ayane fo few menye
 As It was told arthur[*as*] fore to bee , 752
 And thane the kyng-An-hundereth-knychts cold,
 (And fo he hot, for neuermore he wolde
 Ryd of his lond, but In his cumpany
 O hundyre knychts ful of chiuelly)
 He faith, "shir, ande I one hond [may] tak,
 If It you pleß, this Iorney shal I mak "
 Quod galiot, "I grant It yow, but ye
 Shal first go ryd, yone knychts oft *and* see " 760
 With-outen more he ridith our the plan,
 And saw the oft and is returnyd ayai,*
 And callit them mo than he hade fen, for why
 He dred the reprefe of his cumpany 764
 And to his lord apone this wys faith hee,
 "Shir, ten thoufand y ges them for to bee "
 And galiot haith chargit hyme to tak
 Als fell folk, and for the feld hyme mak. 768
 And fo he doith and haith them wel Arayt ,
 Apone the morne his banaris war displayt
 Up goth the trumpetis with the clariounis,
 Ayane the feld blawen furth ther fownis, 772
 Furth goth this king *with* al his oft anon
 Be this the word wes to king arthur gone,
 That knew no thing, nor wift of ther entent,
 But fone his folk ar one to armys went , 776
 But arthur by Report hard saye
 How galiot non armys bur that day,
 Wharfor he thoght of armys nor of fheld
 None wald he tak, nor mak hyme for the feld 780
 But gawane haith he clepit, was hyme by,
 In qwhome Ragnith the flour of cheuelry ,
 And told one what maner, and one what wyß
 He fhuld his batelles ordand and dewys , 784

who thought it
 would degrade
 him to fight in
 proper person
 against so few

[Fol 10 b]
 The king of a
 hundred knights
 (Malegynis) un-
 dertakes the ex-
 ploit

who reconnoitres
 Arthur's host
 and says it is
 10 000 strong
 whereon Galiot
 charges him to
 take the same
 number

Galiot's host set
 out

Arthur's host don
 their armour

Arthur hearing
 that Galiot is un-
 armed, will not
 arm himself

but calls Gawane
 and tells him how
 to order his bat-
 talions

	Befechung hyme, [hyme] wily to for see A3aine thei folk, wich was far mo than hee He knew the charg and paffith one his way Furth to his horß, and makith no dulay , 788 The clariounis blew and furth goth al onon,
Gawane and his men cross over the water at the ford	And our ye watter and the furd al goñe Within o playne vpone that othei fyd Ther gawan gon his batellis to dewide, 792 As he wel couth, and set them in aray, Syne with o manly contynans can fay,
He harangues his men	" Ye falowis wich of the round table beñ, Through al this erth whois fam is hard and fen, 796 Remembrith now It ftondith one the poynt, For why It lyith one your fperis poynt, ¹
[Tol 11]	The well-fare of the king and of our londe , 800 And fen the fucour lyith in your honde, And hardement is thing fhall moft awaill Frome deth ther men of armys in bataill, Lat now your manhed and your hie curage The pryd of al thir multitude affuage , 804 Deth or defence, non other thing we wot "
Maleginis and all his host come over the plain, and Gawane sends a company against them	This fresch king, that maleginis was hot, With al his oft he cummyne our the plañ, And gawan fend o batell hyme agañ , 808 In myde the borde, ² and feftint in the ftell The fperithis poynt, that bitith fcharp and well ,
But they were all too few where- fore Gawane sends a second company	Bot al to few thei war, and mycht nocht left This gret Rout that cummyth one fo fast 812 Than harth for gawan fend, them to fupport, One othir batell with one knyghtly sorte , And fyne the thrid, and fyne the ferde alfo ,
then a thrid then a fourth and then sets out himself to resist the 10,000	And fyne hyme felf one to the feld can go, 816 When that he fauch thar latter batell fter, And the ten thoufand cummyne al thei veir ,

¹ At the bottom of this page appears for the first time a catchword, which is—"The wel fare" ² Or "berde"

- Qwhar that of armes prewit he so well,
 His ennemys gane his mortall [ftrokis] fell 820
 He goith ymong them in his hie curage,
 As he that had of knyghthed the wface,
 And couth hyme weill *conten in* to on hour,
 Azaine his ftrok refistit non armour, 824
 And mony knyght, that worth ware and bolde,
 War thore with hyme of arthur's houfhold,
 And knyghtly gan one to the feld them bere,
 And mekil wroght of armys In to were, 828
 Sir gawan than vpone fuch wyð hyme bure,
 This othere goith al to discumfitoure,
 Sewyne thoufand fled, *and* of the feld thei go,
 Whar of this king in to his hart was wo, 832
 For of hyme felf he was of hie curage
 To galiot than fend he in mefag,
 That he fhuld help his folk for to defende,
 And he to hyme hath xxx^{te} thousand sende, 836
 Whar-of this king gladith in his hart,
 And thinkith to Reweng all the fmart
 That he to for haith fuffint and the payne
 And al his folk returnyt Is ayayne
 Atour the feld, and cummyne thilk as hault,¹ 840
 The fwyft horß goith firft to the affall
 This noble knyght that feith the grete forß
 Of armyt men, that cummyne vpone horß, 844
 To giddir femblit al his falowfchip,
 And thoght them at the fharp poynt to kep,
 So that thar harm fhall be ful deir yboght
 This vthere folk with ftraucht courß hath focht 848
 Out of aray atour the larg felld,
 Thar was the ftrokis feftnit in the fhelde,
 Thei war Refaut at the fper's end
 So arthur's folk can manfully defend, 852

He goes among
 them in his
 courage

and many other
 of Arthur's
 knights perform
 wonders

Malegnis goeth
 to discomfiture
 and 7,000 of his
 men flee

Galiot sends him
 30 000 more

[Fol 11 b]

His folk return
 across the field as
 thick as hail

Arthur's folk re-
 ceive them man-
 fully,

¹ MS "thilk as (Rayne) hault," as if it were at first intended to find a rime to "ayayne"

	The formeſt can thar lyues end conclude, Whar ſone affemblit al the multitude Thar was defens, ther was gret affaill, Richt wonderfull and ſtrong was y ^e bataill,	856
but ſuſtain muca pain	Whar arthuris folk ſuftenit mekil payn, And knyghtly them defendit haith azaïne	
and cannot en- dure againſt ſo many	Bot endur thei mycht, apone no wyſ, The multitude and ek the gret ſuppraiſ , But gawan, wich that ſetith al his payn Vpone knyghthed, defendid fo azaïne, That only in the manhede of this knyght His folk reſoſit them of his gret myght,	860 864
	And ek abaſit hath his ennemys , For throw the feld he goith in ſuch wyſ, And in the preſſ ſo manfully them ſerurth,	
Gawane carves helmets in two, and ſmites heads off ſhoulders, 1	His fuerd atwo the helmys al to kerwith, The hedys of he be the ſhoulderis ſmat , The horſ gorth, of the maſter defolat But what awaleth al his beſynes, So ſtrong and ſo inſufferable vas the preſſ ?	868 872
but his men re- cross the ford to go to their lodges	His folk are paſſit atour the furdys ilkon, Toward ther bretis and to ther luges gon , Whar he and many worthy knyght alſo Of arthuris houſ endurit mekill wo,	876
	That neuer men mar in to armys vroght Of manhed, ȝit was It al for noght	
[Fol 12]	Thar was the ſtreñth, ther was the paſing myght	
Gawane fights alone till night,	Of gawan, wich that whill the durk nyght Befor the luges faucht al hyme aloñ, When that his falowis entrit ware ilkoñ, On arthuris half war mony tan and ſlan , And galotis folk Is hame returnyd azaïne,	880 884
when Galiot's folk return home	For it was laſt , away the oftiſ ridith, And gawan ȝit apone his horſ abidith, Witk fuerd in hond, when thei away var gon, And ſo for wrocht hys lymmys ver ilkon,	888

And wondit ek his body vp and doune,
 Vpone his hors Right thore he fel in fwoune ,
 And thei hyme tuk *and* to his luyne bare,
 Borth king and qwen of hyme vare *in* dispere ,
 For thei supposit, throw marwellis that he vroght,
 He had hyme-felf to his confusioune broght
 [T]his ¹ was nere by of melyhalt, the hyll,
 Whar lanfelot ȝit was *with* the lady fyll
 The knyghtis of the court [can] pasing home ,
 This ladus knyghtis to hi palice com,
 And told to hir, how that the feld was vent,
 And of gawan, and of his hardyment,
 That merwell was his manhed to behold ,
 And sone thir tithingis to the knyght vas told,
 That was with wo and hewyneis opprest ,
 So noyith hyme his fuorne and his rest,
 And but dulay one for o knyght he send,
 That was most speciall with the lady kend
 He comyne, and the knyght vn to hyme said,
 "Displeß yow not, *for*, be ȝhe not ill paid,
 So homly thus I yow exort to go,
 To gare my lady spek o word or two
 With me, that am a carful præsoner" ²
 "Sir, your commande y fihall, *with*outen were,
 Fulfill," and to his lady passit hee
 In lawly wyß besiching hir, that she
 Wald grant hyme to pas at his request,
 Vnto hir knyght, stood wnder hir areft ,
 And she, that knew al gentilleß aight,
 Furth to his chamber passit wight ³ the licht
 And he aroß and saluþ Curtaßly
 The lady, and said, "madem, her I,
 Your præsoner, besekith yow that ȝhe
 Wold merfy and compaffione have of me,

Gawane swoons
upon his horse

892 The king and
queen fear he has
brought himself
to confusion

896

900 The lady of Mely
halt hears of Ga-
wane's deeds

and Lancelot
also

904

who sends for a
knight to take a
message to the
lady

908

912

916

who comes to his
chamber
[Fol 12 b]

920

Lancelot be-
seches her to ap-
point his ransom,

¹ See note to this line

² MS "presonerere"

³ Read "with" (?)

And mak the ranfome wich that I may yeif,
 I waist my tyme in presoun thus to leife 924
 For why I her on be report be told,
 That arthur, with the flour of his housholde,
 Is cummyne here, and in this cuntre lye,
 And stant In danger of his ennemyis, 928
 And haith assemblit, and eft this shalt bee
 Within thort tyme one new assemblee
 Thar-foi, my lady, y youe grace bestich,
 That I mycht pas, my Ranfon for to fech, 932
 Fore I p^resume thar longth to that fort
 That loud me, and shal my nede support"
 "S^hire knyght, It stant nocht in sich dugiee,
 It is no ranfome wich that causith me 936
 To holden yow, or don yow sich offens,
 It is your gult, It is your wiolens,
 Whar of that I desir no thing but law,
 Without report your awn trespas to knaw" 940
 "Madem, your p^risance may ye wel fulfill
 Of me, that am in p^risone at your will
 Bot of that gult, I was for til excus,
 For that I did of werrey nede behw^{is}, 944
 It tuecht to my honore and my fame,
 I mycht nocht leife It but hurting of my nam,
 And ek the knyght was mor to blam than I
 But ye, my lady, of your cunteffy, 948
 Wold 3e deden my Ransoun to refaue,
 Of p^risone fo I my libertee myght haue,
 Y ware 3olde euermore [to be] your knyght,
 Whill that I leif, with al my holl myght 952
 And if so be ye lykith not to ma
 My ranfome, [madem,] if me leif to ga
 To the assemble, wich shal be of new,
 And as that I am faithful knyght and trew, 956
 At nyght to yow I enter shal azaime,
 But if that deth or other lat certan,

presuming that
 some of Arthurs
 knights will pay
 it

She replies that
 she does not want
 a ransom but has
 imprisoned him
 for his guilt

He prays for
 pardon

and begs for
 liberty

or at least to be
 allowed to go to
 the next battle,

under a promise
 to return at
 night

- Throw wich I [may] have such Impediment,
 That I be hold,¹ magre myne entent " 960 [Fol 13]
 "Sir knyght," quod she, "I grant yow leif, withthy
 Your name to me that 3e wil specify " She consents, if
 he will specify to
 her his name
 " Madem, as 3it, futly I ne may
 Duclar my name, one be no maner way , 964
 But I promyt, als fast as I haue tyme
 Conuenient, or may with outen cryme,
 I fhal , " and than the lady saith hyme tyll,
 " And I, fohir knyght, one this condicione will 968
 Grant yow leue, so that ye obliſt bee
 For to Return, as ye haue said to me " She grants him
 leave under the
 proposed condi
 tion
 Thus thei accord, the lady goith to rest,
 The fone discending cloist in the vest , 972
 The ferd day was dewyfit for to bee
 Betuex the oſtis of the affemlee
 And galiot Richt arly by the day,
 A Ayane the feld he can hys folk aray , 976
 And fourty thouſand armyt men haith he,
 That war not at the othir affemlee,
 Commandit to the batell for to gon ,
 " And I my-self," quod he, " fhal me dispone 980
 On to the feild azaine the thrid day ,
 Whar of this were we fhal the end affay "
 And arthuris folk that come one euery fyd,
 A He for the feld can them for to proude, 984
 Wich waie to few azaine the gret affere
 Of galiot 3it to fusten the were
 The knyghtis al out of the cete roſ
 Of melyholt, and to the ſemble gous 988
 And the lady haith, in to ſacret wyſ,
 Gart for hir knyght and preſoner dewyſ
 In red al thing, that ganith for the were ,
 His curſeir red, ſo was both ſcheld and ſpere 992

He refuſes for the
 preſent

She grants him
 leave under the
 proposed condi
 tion

Galiot aſſembles
 40 000 freſh men

Arthur alſo pro
 uides his men for
 the field

The knights of
 Melyholt join
 him

The lady ſecretly
 provides Lance
 lot with a red
 courſer and a
 ſhield and ſpear,
 both red alſo

¹ MS "behold "

- And he, to qwham the piefone hath ben fmar, t,*
With glad defir apone his curfour ftart ,
 Towart the feld anon he gan to ryd,
 And in o plan hout one reuer syde 996
 This knyght, the wich that long haith ben in cag,
 He grew in to o frefch *and* new curage,
 Seing the morow blythfull and amen,
 The med, the Reuer, and the vodus gren, 1000
 The knyghtis in [ther] armys them arayinge,
 The baneris ayaine the feld displayng,
 His 3outh in ftrenth and in prosperytee,
 And fyne of luft the gret aduerfytee ¹ 1004
 Thus in his thocht remembryng at the laft,
 Efterward one fyd he gan his Ey to caft,
 Whar our a bertes ² lying haith he sen
 Out to the feld loking was the qwen , 1008
 Sudandly with that his goft aftar
 Of loue anone haith caught hyme by the hart ,
 Than faith he, "How long fhall It be so,
 Loue, at yow fhall wirk me al this wo ? 1012
 Apone this wyß to be Infortunat,
 Hir for to feue the wich thei no thing wate
 What fufferance I in hir wo endure,
 Nor of my wo, nor of myne aduenture ? 1016
 And I wnworthy ame for to attane
 To hur presens, nor dare I nocht complane
 Bot, hart, fen at yow knawith fhe is here,
 That of thi lyue and of thi deith is ftere, 1020
 Now is thi tyme, now help thi-felf at neid,
 And the dewod of euery point of dred,
 That cowardy be none In to the señ,
 Fore and yow do, yow knowis thi payne, I weyn , 1024
 Yow art wnable euer to attane
 To hur mercy, or cum be ony mayne

He rides towards
the field and
halts in a plain
by the river side

Lancelot is en-
couraged, seeing
the blithe morn,
the mead, the
river the green
woods and the
knights and ban-
ners

[Fol 13 b]

Casting his eyes
aside he sees the
queen looking
over a parapet

Love catches him
by the heart

He counsels his
heart to help it-
self at need,

to forego cow-
ardice,

¹ May we read "duerfytee"?

² MS "abertes"

- Tharfor y red hir thonk at yow differue,
 Or in hir *presens* lyk o knyght to fterf" 1028
 With that confusit *with* an hewy thoct,
 Wich ner his deith ful oft tyme haith hyme foclit,
 Deuoydit was his spritis and his goft,
 He wift not of hyme-felf nor of his oft , 1032
 Bot one his horß, als still as ony fton
 When that the knyghtis armyt war ilkon,
 To warnnyng them vp goith the bludy fown,
 And every knyght vpone his horß is bown , 1036
 Twenty thousand armyt men of were
 The kng that day he wold non armys bere ,
 His batellis ware devyfit eue, ilkon,
 And them foibad out ouir the furdys to gon 1040
 Bot frome that thei ther ennemys haith sen,
 In to fuch wys thei couth them noght fulten ,
 Bot ovr thei went vithouten more delay,
 And can them one that oyer sid affay 1044
 The red knyght still in to his hewy thought
 Was hufyng 3it apone the furd, and noght
 Wift of hime felf , with that a harrold com,
 And fone the knyght he be the brydill nom, 1048
 Saying, "awalk ! It is no tyme to flep ,
 Your worfchup more expedient vare to kep "
 No word he fpak, fo prikith hyme the fmart
 Of hevynes, that ftood vnto his hart 1052
 Two fcrewis cam with that, of quhich [that] on
 The knyghtis fhield ryght frome his hals haith ton ,
 That vthir watter takith atte laft,
 And in the knyghtis wentail haith It caft , 1056
 When that he felt the vatter that vas cold,
 He wonk, and gan about hyme to behold,
 And thinkith how he fum-quhat haith myfgoñ
 With that his fpere In to his hand haith ton, 1060
 Goith to the feld wthouten voidis more ,
 So was he vare whare that there cam before,

and to deserve
her thanks or die

Confused with a
heavy thought

he [sits] on his
horse as still as
stone

The bugles are
blown and the
knights are ready
on horseback
20,000 in number

They are forbid
den to cross the
fords but cannot
be restrained

[Fol 14]

The red knight
still halting by
the ford, a heruk
seizes his bridle
and bids him
awake

Two shrews next
approach one
takes his shield
off his neck
the other casts
water at his ven
tyle which
causes him to
wink and arouse
himself

He goes to the
field and sees the
first-conquest
king

	O manly man he was in to al thing, And clepit was the ferst conquest king	1064
	The Red knyght w th [the] spurs smat the fted, The tother cam, that of hyme hath no drede ,	
They meet	With ferð curag ben the knyghtis met, The king his spere apone the knyght hath set,	1068
	That al in pecið flaw in to the felde , His hawbrek helpit, suppos he had no scheld	
The red knight though shield less, overthrows his foe	And he the king in to the scheld haith ton, That hors and man both to the erd ar gon	1072
The shrew re stores his shield	Than to the knyght he cummyth, that haith tan His fheld, to hyme delueth It ayane,	
	Befiching hyme that of his Ignorance, That knew hyme nat, as takith no grevance	1076
	The knyght his sche[l]d but mor delay haith tak, And let hyme go, and no thing to hyme spak	
	Than thei the ¹ wich that so at cith huth sen Ther lord, the ferst conquest king, y meþ,	1080
The men of the first-conquest king come to the rescue	In haift thei cam, as that thei val agrevit, And manfully thei haith thei king Releut	
	[A]nd Arthurs folk, that lykith not to byde, In goith the spurs in the fteds syde ,	1084
[Fol 14 b]	To giddir thar affemblit al the oft At whois meting many o knyght was loft	
The battle was right cruel to be hold	The batell was richt crewell to behold, Of knyghtis wich that haith there lyvis 3olde	1088
	One to the hart the spere goith throw the scheld, The knyghtis gaping lyth in the feld	
	The red knyght, byrnyng in lous fyre, Goith to o knyght, als fwift as ony vyre,	1092
	The wich he perfit throuch and throuch the hart , The spere is went , w th that anon he ftart,	
The red knight loses his spear, but draws his sword, and roams the field like a lion	And out o fuerd in to his hond he tais , Lyk to o lyone in to the feld he gais,	1096

¹ MS "thei," altered to "thee," which is still wrong

- In to his Rag fmyting to and fro
 Fro fum the arm, fro fum the nek in two,
 Sum in the feild lying is in fwoun,
 And sum his fuerd goyth to the belt al doune 1100
 For qwen that he beholdith to the qwen,
 Who had ben thore his manhed to haue sen,
 His doing in to armys and his myght,
 Shwld fay in world war not fuch o wight 1104
 His faloufchip siche comfoit of his dede
 Haith ton, that thei ther ennemys ne dreid,
 But can them-self ay manfoly conten
 In to the ftour, that hard was to futen, 1108
 For galyot was O pafing multitude
 Of prewit men in armys that war gude,
 The wich can *wit* o frefeh curag affaill
 Ther ennemys that day In to batell, 1112
 That ne ware not the vorfchip *and* manhede
 Of the red knyght, in perell and in dreid
 Arthurs folk had ben, vith-uten vere,
 Set thei var good, thei var of fmal powere 1116
 And gawan, wich gart bryng hyme felf befor
 To the bertes, set he was vondit sore,
 Whar the qwen vas, and whar that he myght see
 The manere of the oft and affemble, 1120
 And when that he the gret manhed haith sen
 Of the red knyght, he faith one to the qwen,
 "Madem, gone knyght in to the armys Rede,
 Nor neuer I hard nore faw in to no fted 1124
 O knyght, the wich that in to fhortar fpace
 In armys haith mor forton nore mor grace,
 Nore bettar doith both with fper and fcheild,
 He is the hed and comfoit of our feild " 1128
 "Now, fir, I traift that neuer more vas fen
 No man in feild more knyghtly hyme *conten*,
 I pray to hyme that euery thing hath cure,
 Saif hyme fro deth or wyknt aduenture " 1132

Some he cleaves
to the belt

His fellows take
comfoit from his
deeds,

though Galiot's
host was a sur-
passing multi-
tude

Had it not been
for the manhood
of the red knight
Arthur's folk had
been in peril

Gawane is led to
the parapet,

and saith to the
queen that none
ever did better
than yon red
knight

[Fol 15]

The queen prays
for Lancelot

- The field was
perilous on both
sides,
from early morn
till the sun had
gone down
- The feild It was *rycht* *perellus* and strong
On both the fydis, and continewit long,
Ay from the fone the *varldis* face gan licht
Whill he was gone *and* *cumyne* vas the nycht , 1136
And than o forð thei *mycht* It not afftart,
On *euery* fyð behout them depart
- Every knight
then returns
home and the red
knight prively
goes back to the
city
- The feild is don and ham goith *euery* *knycht*,
And preuayl, unwit of any wicht, 1140
The way the red *knycht* to the cete taus,
As he had hecht, *and* in his *chambre* gais
When arthure hard how the *knycht* Is gon,
He blamyt fore his lordis *euerylk*-one , 1144
And oft he haith remembrit in his thoght,
What multitud that galot had brought ,
Seing his folk that ware so ewil awayt,
In to his mynd he stondith al affrayt, 1148
And faith, "I traift ful futh It fal be founde
My drem Richt as the *clerkis* gan expounde ,
For why my men failzeis now at neid,
My-self, my londe, in *perell* and in dreide " 1152
- ' My men now
fail me at need
- Galot tells his
counsel
- And galot vpone hie worchip set,
And his confell anon he gart be fet,
To them he faith, "with arthur weil 3e see
How that It ftant, and to qwhat degre, 1156
Azanis ws that he is no poware ,
Wharfor, me think, no worchip to ws ware
In conqueryng of hyme, nor of his londe,
He haith no ftrenth, he may ws not vithftonde 1160
Wharfor, me think It best is to delay,
And resput hyme for a tuelmoñeth day,
Whill that he may assemble al his myght ,
Than is mor worchip azanis hyme to ficht , " 1164
And thus concludit thoght hyme for the best
The very *knychtis* passing to there Rest,
Of melyholt the ladeis *knychtis* ilkone
Went home, and to hir *presens* ar thei gon , 1168
- that there is no
honour in con-
quering Arthur
- and proposes a
twelvemonth s
truce

- At qwhome ful fone than gan scho to Inquere,
 And al the maner of the oftis till spere
 How that It went, and in what maner wyß,
 Who haith moft worfchip, *and* who is moft to pryß?
 "Madem," *quod* thei, "O knyght was In the feild,
 Of Red was al his armour and his fheld,
 Whois manhed can al others to exceed,
 May nan report in armys half his deid , 1176
 Ne wor his worfchip, fhortly to conclud,
 Our folk of help had ben al deftitud
 He haith the thonk, the vorfchip in hyme lrys,
 That we the feld defendit in fch wyß " 1180
 The lady thane one to hur felf haith thocht,
 "Whether Is þone my prefonar, ore noght?
 The futhfaftneß that fhäl y wit onon "
 When eury wight vn to ther Reft war gon, 1184
 She clepith one hur cwlynes ful nere
 Wich was to hur moft fpeciall and dere,
 And faith to hur, "qwheyar if yone bee
 Our prefonar, my consell Is we see " 1188
 With that the maden In hur hand hath ton
 O torche, and to the ftabille ar thei gon ,
 And fond his fted lying at the ground,
 Wich wery was, ywet with mony wounde 1192
 The maden faith, "vpone this horß is fen,
 He in the place quhar strokys was hath beñ ,
 And þhit the horß It is nochit wich that hee
 Furth with hyme hade ,"—the lady faid, "*per* dee,
 He vlyt haith mo horß than one or two ,
 I led one to his armys at we go "
 Tharwith one to his armys ar thei went ,
 Thei fond his helm, thei fond his hawbrek rent, 1200
 Thei fond his fcheld was frucht al to nochit ,
 At fchort, his armour In fch wyß vas vrocht
 In eury place, that no thing was left haill,
 Nore neuer eft accordith to bataill 1204

The lady of Mely
 holt asks her
 knights who hath
 won most honour

[Fol 10 b]

They reply that
 a red knight had
 exceeded all
 others

The lady wonders
 if her prisoner is
 meant

She calls her
 cousin,

who takes a
 torch and they
 go to the stable

and find his steed
 wounded.

Next they view
 his armour

and find his hau-
 berk rent, and his
 shield crushed all
 to naught

- They think he has
well used his
armour Than faith the lady to hir cufynes,
"What fal we fay, what of this matei goß?"
"Madem, I fay, thei have *nocht* ben abwayt,
He that them bur fchortly he has them vifit" 1208
"That may 3e fay, fuppos the beft that lewis,
Or moft of worfchip in til armys prewis,
Or 3hit haith ben in ony tyme beforñ,
Had them in fild in his maft curag boiñ" 1212
- They next visit
the knight him
self "Now," *quod* the lady, "will we paß, and see
The knyght hyme self, and ther the futz may we
[Fol 18] Knew of this thing" Incontynent them¹ both
Thir ladeis vn to his chambre goith 1216
- who was now
asleep The knyght al wery fallyng was on flep,
This maden paffith In, *and* takith kep
Sche fauch his brest *with* al his fchowders bare,
That bludy war and woundit hei and thare, 1220
His face was al to hurt and al to fchent,
His newis fwellyng war and al to Rent
Sche fmylyt a lyt, and to hir lady fald,
"It femyth weill this knyght hath ben affaid" 1224
- The lady next ob-
serves him, The lady fauch, and rewit in hir thoght
The knyght's worfchip wich that he haith vroght
and is smitten to
the heart by the
dart of love, In hire Remembrance loues fyre dart
With hot defyre hir fmat one to the hart, 1228
And then a quhill, *with* outen wordis mo,
In to hir mynd thinking to and fro,
She ftudent fo, and at the laft abraid
Out of hir thocht, and fudandly thus fald, 1232
- and prays her
cousin to draw
aside while she
kisses the knight "With draw," *quod* fhe, "one fyd a lyt² the lyght,
Oñ that I paß that I may kyß the knyght"
"Madem," *quod* fche, "what is It at 3e meñ?
Of hie worfchip our mekill have 3e señ 1236
So sone to be fupprait *with* o thoght
What is It at 3he think? preßwm 3e noght
That if yon knyght wil walkin, and perfauf,
¹ "then" (?) ² MS "alyt"

- He ſhal yarof no thing bot ewill confair , 1240
 In his entent Ruput yow therby
 The ablare to al lychtneſ and foly ?
 And blam the more al vtheris in his mynd,
 If your gret wit in ſich deſire he fynde ? " 1244
 " Nay," *quod* the lady, " no thing may I do
 For ſich o knyght may be defam me to " *The lady replies*
 " Madem, I wot that for to loue yone knyght,
 Confidir his fame, his worſchip, and his myght , 1248 *Her couſin next argues the point*
 And to begyne as worſchip wil dewyſ,
 Syne he ayaime myght lowe yow one fuch wyſ,
 And hold yow for his lady and his loue,
 It war to yow no maner of Reprwe 1252
 But quhat if he appetit be and thret
 His hart to lowe, and ellis whar y fet ? *What if he loves another ?*
 And wel y wot, madem, if It be ſo,
 His hart hymne ſal not fuffi to loue two, 1256
 For noble hart wil have no dowbilneſ , *[Col 16 b]*
 If It be ſo, 3he tyne yowr low, I geſ ,
 Than is your ſelf, than is vour loue Refuſit,
 Your ſam is hurt, your gladneſ is conclufit 1260
 My confell is, therefore, you to abſten
 Whill that to yow the werray Ryght be ſen
 Of his entent, the wich ful ſon 3he may
 Have knowlag, If yow lykith to affay " 1264
 So moki to hir lady haith ſhe vroght
 That at that tyme ſhe haith *Returmyt* hir thoçht
 And to hir chambre went, *withouten* more,
 Whar loue of new affaith hir ful ſore 1268
 So well long thei ſpeking of the knyght,
 Hir cuſynace hath don al at ſhe myght
 For to expel that thing out of hir thoçht ,
 It wil not be, hir labou Is for nocht 1272
 Now leiſ we hir In to hir neweſt pan,
 And to arthur we wil retwrn agai

*She perſuades
 the lady to return
 to her chamber
 without further
 delay*

*Her couſin la-
 bours to expel
 her love for I an
 celot from her
 thoughts but her
 labour is in vain*

[BOOK II]

Night	T he cloudy nyght, wndu whos obscure	
	The rest and quiet of euery creature	1276
	Lyth lauf, quhare the goft with busynes	
	Is occupit, with thoughtfull hewynes,	
	And, for that thocht furth schewing vil his mycht,	
	Go fare wel rest and quiet of the nycht	1280
Arthur cannot rest	Aitur, I meyne, to whome that rest is nocht,	
	But al the nycht supprnit is with thocht,	
	In to his bed he turnyth to and fro,	
	Remembryng the apperans of his wo,	1284
	That is to say, his deith, his confusioun,	
	And of his realme the opin distrucioun	
	That in his wit he can no thing provide,	
	Bot tak his forton thar for to abyd	1288
The sun goeth up	Vp goith the son, vp goith the hot morow,	
	The thoughtful king al the nycht to sorow,	
[Fol 17]	That sauch the day, vpon his feet he start,	
Arthur goeth forth	And furth he goith, distrublit in his hart	1292
	A quhill he walkith in his penyf goft,	
He hears that a clerk has arrived,	So was he ware thar cummyne to the oft	
	O clerk, with whome he was agwynt befor,	
	In to his tyme non better was y-bore,	1296
	Of qwhois com he gretly vas Reiofit,	
	For in to hyme sum comfort he supposit,	
between whom and himself there was a hearty af- fection.	Betwex them was one hartly affeccioun	
	Non orderis had he of Relegioun,	1300
	Famous he was, and of gret excellence,	
He was expert in the seven sciences	And rycht expert in al the vij science,	
	Contemplatif and chaft in gouernance,	
and was named Amytans	And clepit was the maister amytaus	1304

The king befor his palzoune one the gren,
 That knew hyme well, *and* haith his cummyn feñ,
 Velcummyt hyme, and maid hyme *rycht* gud chere,
 And he agan, agrewit as he were, 1308
 Saith, "nothir of thi falosfing, nor the,
 Ne rak I *nocht*, ne charg I *nocht*," *quod* hee
 Than *quod* the king, "*maister*, *and* for what why
 Ar 3e agrewit? or quhat treffpas have I 1312
 Commytat, so that I fhal yow disples?"
 Quod he, "no thing It is ayane myn es,
 But only *contrare* of thi-self alway,
 So fare the courß yow passith of the way 1316
 Thi schip, that goth apone the stormy vall,
 Ney of thi careldis in the fwelf it fall,
 Whar fhe almost is in the *perell* dreht,
 That is to say, yow art so far myfwent 1320
 Of wykitnes vpone the vrechit dans,
 That yow art fall yng in the storng¹ vengans
 Of goddis wreth, that fhal the son deuour,
 For of his ftrok approcht now the hour 1324
 That both thi Ringe, thi ceptre, *and* thi crowñ,
 Frome hie estat he fmyting fhal adoune
 And that accordith well, for in thi thocht
 Yow knawith not hyme, the wich that haith the wrocht,
 And fet the vp in to this hie estat
 From powert, for, as the felwyne wat,
 It cummyth al bot only of his myght,
 And not of the, nor of thi eldres Richt 1332
 To the discending, as in heritage,
 For yow was not byget in to spoufag
 Wharfor yow aucht his biding to obserf,
 And at thy mycht yow fshuld hyme pleß *and* ferf, 1336
 That dois yow nat, for yow art so confuffit
 With this fals wairld, that thow haith hyme Refuffit,

Arthur welcomes him

He recks nothing of Arthur's salutation

The king inquires what trespass he has committed

He replies "It is not against me but against thy self"

Thy ship is almost drowned in the whirlpool

That is God's wrath shall soon devour thee

Because thou knowest Him not who set thee up in this high estate

though not begotten in spousage [Fol 17 b]

¹ So in MS Is it necessary to alter it to "strong"?

- And brokine haith his reul and ordynans,
The wich to the he grve in gouernans 1340
- He made thee
ki g
He maid the king, he maid the gouernour,
He maid the fo, and set in his honou
Of Realmys and of [duers] peplis sue,
Efter his loue thow shuld them Reul *and* stere, 1344
And wnoppressit kep in to Iustice,
The wyklyt men and pwnyce for thei vice
Yow dois no thing, bot al in the *contaire*,
And sufferith al thi puple to forsaie, 1348
Yow haith non Ey but one thyne awn delvt,
Or quhat that plesing shal thyne oppetyt
In the defalt of law and of Iustice,
Wnder thi hond is sufferyt gret suppurß 1352
Of fadurles, and modurles also,
And wedwis ek sustenit mckill wo
With gret myschef oppressit is the pure,
And thow art caus of al this hol Innuce, 1356
Whar of that god a raknyng sal craf
At the, and a fore Raknyng sal hafe,
For thyne estat is gewyne to Redief
Thar ned, and kep them to rychtwyness, 1360
And thar is non that ther complantis heris,
The mychty folk, and ek the flattereris
Ar cheif with the, and doith this oppressioun,
If thai complen, It is ther confusioun 1364
And damell faith that who doith to the pure,
Or faderles, or modurles, Enfure,
Or to the puple, that ilke to god doith hee,
And al this harme sustenit Is throw the 1368
Yow sufferith them, oppressith *and* mooyth,
So yow art caus, throw the thei ar distroyth,
Than, at thi mycht, god so distroys yow
What shal he do azane? quhat shal yow, 1372
When he distroys by vengeance of his fued
The synaris fra the vysagis of the Erde?
- and thou suffer
est thy puple to
fue ill
- The poor are op
pressed
- If they complain
is their confu
sion
- What wilt thou
do when God
destroys sinners
off the visage of
the earth

- Than vtraly yow fhall diftroyt bee,
 And that Richt weill apperis now of thee, 1376
 For yow allon byleft art folitere,
 And the wyð salamon can duclar,
 'Wo be to hyme that is byleft alone,
 He haith no help,' so Is thi forton goñe, 1380
 For he is callit, with quhom that god is nocht,
 Allone, and fo thi wykitneð haith wrocht
 That god hyme felf he is bycumyn thi fo,
 Thi pupleis hartis haith thow tynt also, 1384
 Thi wykitneð thus haith the maid alon,
 That of this erth thi fortune Is y goñ
 Yow mone thi lyf, yow mone thi vorsechup tyne,
 And eft to deth that neuw fhal haf fyne" 1388
 "Maister," quod he, "of yowre beneuolens
 Y yow befech that tueching myn offens,
 3he wald wichfar your confell to me If
 How I fal mend, and ek her eftur leif" 1392
 "Now," quod the maister, "and I have merwell qwhy
 Yow askith confail, and wil in non affy,
 Nor wyrk thar by, and 3hit yow may In tym,
 If yow lykith to amend the cryme" 1396
 "3his," faith the king, "and futhfastly I will
 3our ordynans in euey thing fulfyll"
 "And if the list at confail to abide,
 The remed of thi harme to prouyde— 1400
 First, the begynning is of sapiens,
 To dreid the lord and his magnificens,
 And what thow haith in contrar hyme ofendit,
 Whill yow haith mycht, of fre desir amend it,¹ 1404
 Repent thi gilt, repent thi gret trespass,
 And remembir one goddis richwyfneð,
 How for to hyme that wykitneð anoyt,
 And how the way of fynans he diftroit, 1408

Solomon saith
 Wo to him who
 is left alone! He
 hath no help
 [Fol 18]

Thou hast lost thy
 people's hearts

and shalt come
 to death that hath
 no end

Arthur asks how
 he shall amend,

and promises to
 fulfil his bidding

The master re-
 plies Thou
 must first dread
 the Lord

Repent thy guilt

¹ MS "amendit"

	And if ye lyk to ryng wnde his peß, Ye wengans of his mychty hond yow feß, This schalt yow do, if yow wil be perfit First, mone yow be penitent and contrit 1412 Of euery thing that tucchith thi consiens, Done of fre will, or 3hit of neglygens
Thy need re- quireth full con- fession	Thi neid requirith ful contretioune, Princepaly with-out conclusioun , 1416 With humble hart and gostly byfyneß, Syne shalt yow go deuotly the confess
Confess to some holy confessor	Ther of vnto sum haly confessor, That the wil consail tueching thin arou , 1420 And to fulfill his will and ordynans,
Do penance and amend all wrong	In iatiffaccione and doing of penans, And to amend al wiang and al Innuie, By the ydone til euery Creature , 1424
[Fol 18 b]	If yow can In to thi hart fynde, Contretioune well degeß In to thi mynd Now go thi were, for if it lesul werð, Confessioun to me, I shuld It here " 1428
Arthur tries to remember every sin done since his years of inno- cence	T han arthur, Richt obedient and mek, In to his wit memoiatyve can seik Of euery gult wich that he can pens, Done frome he passith the 3eris of Innocens , 1432 And as his maister hyme commandit had.,
and made his con- fession with la- mentable cheer	He goth and his confessioun haith he maad Richt deuotly with lementable chere , 1436 The maner wich quho lykith for to here He may It fynd In to the holl romans, Of confessioun o passing <i>circumstans</i> I can It not, I am no confessor, My wyt harth ewill confat of that labou , 1440 Quharof I wot I aucht repent me fore The king wich was confessit, what is more, Goth and til his maister tellith hee, How euery fyne In to his awn degree 1444

- He shew, that mycht occuryng to his mynde
 "Now," *quod* the maistere, "left thou aght behynde
 Of albenak the vorsehupful king ban,
 The wich that vas in to my seruice slan, 1448
 And of his wif differist eft also?
 Bot of ther sone, the wich was them fro,
 Ne spek¹ y not,"—the king in his entent
 Abafyt was, and furthwith is he went 1452
 Azane, and to his confessor declarith,
 Syne to his maister he ayane Reparith,
 To quhome he saith, "I astir my cunyng
 Your ordinans fulfillit in al thing, 1456
 And now right hartly y besek and prey,
 The wald withschaf sum thing to me say,
 That may me comfort in my gret dreid,
 And how my men ar falzet in my Neid, 1460
 And of my dreame, the wich that is so dirk"
 This maister saith, "and thou art bound to virk
² **A**T my conseil, and if yow has maad 1464
 Thi confessione, as yow before hath said,
 And in thi consciens thinkith perseuere,
 As I presume that thou onon shalt here
 That god hyme self shal so for y^e prouide,
 Thou shal Remayne and In thi Ring abyde 1468
 And why thi men ar falzet At this nede,
 At short this is the caus, shalt yow nocht dred,
 Fore thou to gode was frawart and perwert,
 Thi ryngne and the he thocht for to subwart, 1472
 And yow sal knaw na power may recist,
 In contrar quhat god lykith to affi[f]t
 The verthw nore the strentth of victory
 It cummyth not of man, bot anerly 1476

"Leftest thou
 aught behind
 quoth the master
 about Ban king
 of Albenak and
 his disinherited
 wife?"

The king again
 confesses and re-
 turns,

prays for com-
 fort,

and inquires
 about his dream
 The master saith
 "If thou art
 bound to work by
 my counsel,

thou shalt abide
 in thy kingdom
 [Fol 19]

Strength of vic-
 tory cometh from
 God only

¹ MS apparently has "srpek," but a comparison with line 1543 shews that the apparent *r* is due to the meeting of two slight flourishes belonging to the *s* and *p*

² This line (though it should not) begins with an illuminated letter

- Of hyme, the wich haith euey fainth, *and* than,
 If that the wauis pleffit hyme of man,
 He fhal haue forð azane his ennemys
 A-ryght agan apone the famyne vjð, 1480
- whoso disp'eres
 Him shall be sub
 ject to his ene-
 mies as we 1e id
 in the Bible con-
 cerning the Jews
- If he difpleð vn to the lord, he fhall
 Be to his fais a fubiet or a thiall,
 As that we may In to the bible red,
 Fueching the folk he tuk hyme felf to led 1484
 In to the lond, the wich he them bylicht
 Ay when thei ghed in to his ways Richt,
 Ther fois gon befor there fueid to nocht,
 And when that thei ayanis hyme hath vrocht, 1488
 Thei war so full of radur and diffpare,
 That of o leif fleing in the air,
 The found of It haith gart o thoufand tak
 At onys apone them felf the bak, 1492
 And al ther manhed vterly foryhet,
 Sich dreid the lord apone ther hartis set
 So fhalt yow know no powar may withftond,
 Ther god hyme felf hath ton the cauð on hond 1496
- Thine own of
 fence is the rea-
 son why thy
 people fail thee
- And ye quhy ftant in thyne awn offens,
 That al thi puple falghet off defens
 And fum al falgeing magre ther entent,
 Thei ar to quhom thow yewyne hath thi rent, 1500
 Thi gret Reuard, thi riches and thi gold,
 And cheriffith and held in thi houfhold
 Bot the moft part ar falgheit the at wyll,
 To quhome yow haith wnkyndneð fchawin till, 1504
 Wrong and mIure, and ek defalt of law,
 And pwnyng of qwhich that thei ftand aw,
 And makith feruice but reward or fee,
 Syne haith no thonk bot fremmytneð of the 1508
 Such folk to the cummyth bot for dred,
 Not of fre hart the for to help at nede
 And what awalith owthir fheld or fper,
 Or horð or armoure according for ye were, 1512
- Thou hast shewn
 some of them un-
 kindness

- Vith outen man them for to ftere and led ?
 And man, yow wot, that vantith hart is ded,
 That in to armys feruith he of noght ,
 A coward oft ful mekil harm haith vroght 1516
 In multitude nore ȝhit in confluens
 Of fisch, is nowther manhed nore defens
 And so thow hath the rewlyt, that almoft
 Of al thi puple the hartis ben ylost , 1520
 And tynt richt throw thyne awn myfgouernans
 Of auerice and of thyne errogans
 What is o prince ? quhat is o gouernoure
 Witouthen fame of worchip and honour ? 1524
 What is his mycht, fuppos he be A lorde,
 If that his folk fal noch to hyme accorde ?
 May he his Rigne, may he his holl Empire
 Suften al only of his owne defyre, 1528
 In ferwyng of his wrechit appetit
 Of awerice and of his awn delyt,
 And hald his men, wncherift, in thraldome ?
 Nay ! that fhall fone his hie eftat confome 1532
 For many o knyght¹ therby is broght ydoun,
 All vtraly to ther confufioun ,
 For oft it makith vther kingis by
 To wer on them In traft of victory , 1536
 And oft als throw his peple is diftroyth,
 That fyndith them agrewit or anoyth ,
 And god alfo oft with his awn fwerd,
 Punyith ther wyfis one this erd 1540
 Thus falith not o king but gouernans,
 Boith realme and he goith one to myfchans ”
 AS thai war thus fpeking of this thinge,
 Frome galot cam two knyghtis to the king , 1544
 That one the king of hundereth knyghtis was ,
 That other to nome the fyrst conqueft king² has,

[Fol 19 b]

and a man that
wanteth heart is
deadThou hast so con-
ducted thyself as
to lose all thy
people's heartsWhat is a prince
without honour ?Can he by him-
self sustain his
kingdom by
serving his own
appetite ?His oppression of
his people con-
sumes his high
estate and makes
other kings war
on themGod also punishes
their vicesMeanwhile the
king of a hundred
knights and the
first-conquest
king come from
Galot,¹ "king" (?)² MS "kinghe," a spelling due to confusion with "knight"

See l 1533

At first that galyot conqueant of one
 The *newest* way one to the king thei gon, 1548
 And vp he roß as he that wel couthe do
 Honor, to quhome that It assaith to ,
 And zhit he wist not at thei kingis were ,
 So them¹ thei both and vyth rycht knyghtly chei 1552
 Reuerendly thei fulst hyme, and thane
 The king of hunder knyghtis he began
 And said hyme, "fu, to zow my lord ws fende,
 Gahot, whilk bad ws say he wende, 1556
 That of this world the vorthiest king wor zhe,
 Greteft of men and of awtortee
 Whatof he has gret wonder that zhe ar
 So foble cummyne In to his contrare, 1560
 For to defend your cuntie *and* your londe,
 And knowith well zhe may hyme nocht withstonde
 Wharfor he thinkith no worschip to conquere,
 Nore in the weris more to perfyuere , 1564
 Confiddir yowr wakneß and yowr Indegens,
 Azanis hyme as now to mak defens
 Wharfore, my lord haith grantit by vs here
 Trewis to yhow and resput for o zhere, 1568
 If that yhow lykith by the zheris space
 For to retwrn ayane In to this place,
 Her to manteine yhour cuntre and withstond
 Hyme with the holl power of yhour lond 1572
 And for the tyme the trewis shal endure,
 Yhour cuntre and yhour lond he will assurre ,
 And wit zhe zhit his powar is nocht here
 And als he bad ws say yhow by the yhere, 1576
 The gud knyght wich that the Red armys bure
 And in the feild maid the discumfiture,
 The whilk the flour of knyghted may be cold,
 He thunkith hyme to haue of his houshold " 1580

and the former
delivers his mes-
sage to the effect
that

[Col 20]

Gahot wonders at
the feebleness of
Arthur's folk,

and is willing to
grant a year's
truce

if Arthur will
return to fight
against him in a
year's time

and desires to
have the red
knight in his
household

¹ "then" (?)

“Well,” *quod* the king, “I have hard quhat yhe say,
 But if god will, and ek if that I may,
 In to sich wyß I think for to withftond,
 Yhour lord fhall have no powar of my londe ” 1584
 Of this meßag the king Reioßing haf,
 And of the trewis wich that grantit was,
 Bot anoyt ȝhit of the knyght was he,
 Wich thei awant to have in fuch dogre 1588
 Ther leif thei tuk , and when at thei war gon,
¹ **T**his maifter faith, “how lykith god difpone !
 Now may yhow fe *and* futh is my recorde ,
 For by hyme now is makith this accord , 1592
 And by non vthur worldly p^{ro}videns,
 Sauß only grant of his bynewolans,
 To fe if that the lykith to amend,
 And to p^{ro}uid thei cuntre to defend 1596
 Wharfor yow fhalt in to thi lond home fair,
 And gowerne the as that I fhall declare
 Firß, thi god with humble hart yow ferße,
 And his comand at al thi mycht oberß, 1600
 And fyne, lat paß the ilk bleßit wonde
 Of lowe with *mercy* Iußtly throw thi londe ,
 And y beßeich—to quhome yow fal direke
 The rewle vpone, the wrangis to correk— 1604
 That yow be nocht in thi electioun blynde,
 For writn It Is and yow fal trew It fynde
 That, be thei for to thonk or ellis blame,
 And towart god thi *part* fhall be the faß , 1608
 Of Ignorans fhalt yow nocht be excußit,
 Bot in ther werkis forly be accußit,
 For thow fhuld euer cheß apone sich wyß
 The mißteris² that reüll haith of Iußtice — 1612
 Firß, that he be deßcret til wnderftond
 And lowe and ek the mater of the londe ,

Arthur rejoices
at the truce

which the master
attributes to
God's provi-
dence and ex-
horts him, say-
ing

[Fol 20a]
' First serve God
with humble
heart and let the
wand of law pass
through the land.

Thus shalt thou
choose the mi-
sters of justice

¹ The initial T is illuminated

² MS “mißteris”

	And be of mycht and ek Autoritee, (For puple ay <i>contempnith</i> low degre,) 1616 And that of trouth he folow furth the way , That is als mych as he louyth trewth alway , And haith al them the wich fal pas therfio Syne, that he god dreid and lowe al so 1620
Avoid avaricious and wrathful men	Of auence be-war with the defyie, And of hyme full of haftyne <i>s</i> and fyie , Be war thar for of malice and desyre, And hyme also that lowith no medyre , 1624 For al this abhominable was hold, When Iustice was in to the tymis olde For qwho that is of an of thir by-know, The left of them subuertith all the low, 1628 And makith It w[n]Iustly ¹ to procede ,
Eschew unfit men for this shall be thy meed in the day of judg ment	Eschew tharfor, for this fal be thi meid Apon the day when al thing goith aright, Whar none excu <i>s</i> hidyng schal ye lyght , 1632 But he the Iug, that no man may suffpek, Euery thing ful Iustly fal correk Be-war thar-wi <i>th</i> , as before have I told, And ches them wyfly that thi low shal hold 1636 And als I will that it well oft be sen, Richt to thi self how thei thi low <i>conten</i> ,
Be diligent to in quire how judg ment is gven	And how the Right, and how the dom is went, For to Inquer that yow be delygent 1640
[Fol 21]	And puny <i>s</i> for, for o thing shal yow know, The most trespas is to subuert the low, So that yow be not in thar gilt accu <i>s</i> it, And frome the froit of bliffit folk refu <i>s</i> it 1644
Visit every chief town throughtout the bounds of thy kingdom	And pas yow shalt to euery chaf toune, Throw out the boundis of thi Regioun Whar yow fall be, that Iustice be Elyk With-out diuisione baith to pur and ryk 1648

¹ MS "w Iustly "

- And that thi puple have [ane] awdiens
 With thar complantis, and also thi presens,
 For qwho his eris frome the puple stekith,
 And not his hond in ther support furth rekith, 1652
 His dom fall be ful grewous & ful hard,
 When he fal cry and he ial nochit be hard
 Wharfor thyne eris ifith to the pwre,
 Bot in redress of ned, & not of mIure, 1656
 Thus fall thei don of Resfone & knowlag
But kingis when thei ben of tender ag,
 Y wil not say I traft thei ben excusit,
 Bot schortly thei fall be far accusit, 1660
 When so thei cum to yheris of Resfone,
 If thei tak not full contritioun,
 And pwnyſ them that hath ther low myfgyt
 That this is trouth it may not be denyt, 1664
 For vthei ways thei fal them not discharg,
 [Excep thei pwnyſ them that have the charg]¹
 One estatys of ther realm, that fhold
 With in his ȝouth se that his low be hold ² 1668
 And thus thow the, with mercy, kep alway
 Of Iustice furt/ the ilk bleffit way
And of thi wordis beis trew and stable,
 Spek not to mych, nore be not vareable 1672
 O kingis word fhold be o kingis bonde,
 And said It is, a kingis word fhold stond,
 O kingis word, among our faderis old,
 Al out more precious & more fur was hold 1676
 Than was the eth or feel of any wight,
 O king of trouth fuld be the werray lyght,
 So treuth and Iustice to o king accordyth
 And als, as thir clerkis old recordith, 1680
³ **I**n tyme is larges and humiltee

Right well according vnto hie dugre,

¹ A blank space here occurs, just sufficient to contain one line

² MS "behold"

³ The initial I is illuminated, rather because there is here a change of subject than because it begins a new sentence

- And pleffith boith to god and man al so ,
 [Fol 21 b] Wharfor I wil, *incontinent* thow go, 1684
 And of thi lond in euery *part* abide,
 Whar yow gar fet and clep one *euery* fid
 Out of thi cuntieis, and ek out of thi tovnis,
 Invite thy dukes, Thī dukis, erlis, and thī gret baronis, 1688
 earls great
 barons
 Thī pur knyghtis, and thī bach[er]leris,
 thy poor knights
 and thy bach
 lers and welcome
 them severally
 And them refauf als hastily as afferis,
 And be them-felf yow welcum them ilkon
 Syne, them to glaid and chernis, thee dispone 1692
 With fefting and with humyll *contynans*
 Be not penfyve, nore proud in arrogans,
 Bot *wit*h them hold in gladnes cumpany ,
 Keep company Not with the Rich nor myghty anely, 1696
 not with the rich
 man only but
 with the poor
 worthy man also
 Bot with the pure worthi man also,
 Wit*h* them thow fit, wit*h* them yow 1yd and go
 I fay not to be ou fameliar,
 For, as the most philofephur can duclar, 1700
 Yet remember
 that familiarity
 breeds contempt
 To mych to oys familiaritee
 Contempnyng byngith one to hie dugre ,
 Bot chence them wit*h* wordis fan depaynt,
 So with thī pupelle fal yow the aquaynt 1704
 Choose out of
 each district an
 aged knight to be
 thy counsellor
 Than of ilk cuntie wyfly yow enquere
 An agit knyght to be thī consulere,
 That haith ben hold in armys Richt famus,
 Wyf and discret, & no thing Inwyus , 1708
 For there is non that knowith so wel, I-wyf
 O worthy man as he that worthi Is
 When thou hast
 sojourned long in
 a place then pro-
 vide thee with
 plenty of horses
 armour gold sil-
 ver and cloth-
 ing
 When well long haith yow fwiornyt in a place,
 And well acqueynt the wit*h* thī puple has, 1712
 Than fhalt thow ordand & prowid the
 Of horf and ek of armour gret plente ,
 Of gold, and siluer, tressore, and clething,
 And euery Riches that longith to o king, 1716
 and, before leav-
 ing distribute
 gifts liberally
 And when the lykith for to tak thī leif,
 By larges thus yow thī reward geif,

- First to the pure worthy honorable,
 That is til armys and til manhed able , 1720
 (Set he be pur, ȝhit worfchip in hyme bidith) ,
 If hyme the horþ one wich thi felwyne Ridith,
 And bid hyme that he Rid hyme for yhour fak ,
 Syne til hyme gold and filuer yow betak , 1724
 The horþ to hyme for worfchip and prowes,
 The trefor for his fredome and laiges
 If moft of Riches and of Cherrifing ,
 Eftur this gud knyght berith vitnesing 1728
 Syne to thi tennandis & to thi wawafouris
 If effy haknays, palfras, and curfours,
 And robis fch as plesand ben and fair ,
 Syne to thi lordis, wich at mychty are, 1732
 As dukis, erlis, princis, and ek kingis,
 Yow if them strang, yow if them vncouth thingis,
 As diuerþ iowellis, and ek preciouþ ftonis,
 Oþ halkis, hundis, ordinit for the nonis, 1736
 Or wantone horþ that can noch stand in ftåble ,
 Thar giftis mot be fair and delitable
 Thus, firft vn to the vorthu pur yow if
 Giftis, that may ther pouerte Releif , 1740
 And to the rich iftis of plesans,
 That thei be fair, fet noch of gret fubftans ,
 For riches askith no thing bot delyt,
 And powerþ haith ay ane appetyt 1744
 For to support ther ned and Indigens
 Thus fhall yow if and makith thi dispens
 And ek the quen, my lady, fhalt alfo
 To madenis and to ladeis, quhai ȝhe go, 1748
 If, and cherrþ one the famyne wyf ,
 For in to largesþ al thi welfar lȳs
 And if thy giftis with fch continans
 That thei be fen ay gifyne vith plesans , 1752
 The wyf man fais, and futh it is approuit,
 Thar is no thonk, thar is no ift alowit,

Give to the poor
 worthy man the
 horse thou thy
 self ridest

[Fol 22 a]

Give to thy ten
 ants and vava
 sours easy hack
 neys palries and
 coursers

Give to thy lords
 things strange
 and uncouth

So too shall the
 queen give to
 maidens and la
 dies,

for all thy welfare
 lies in liberality

- For al thi Realmys and thi gret Riches,
 If that yow lak of worchip the encref?
 Well leß, al-out, for efter thar eftate
 Ther have vorchip, and kepith It al gat, 1792
 And yow degradith al thyne hie dugree,
 That fo schuld fhyne In to nobeltee,
 Throuch wys and throw the wrechitneß of hart
 And knowis yow not what fall be¹ thi part, 1796
 Out of this world when yow fal paß the courß?
 Fair well, I-wyß¹ yow neuer fshall Recourß
 Whar no prince more fshall the subiet² have,
 But be als dep in to the erd y grave, 1800
 Sauß vertew only and worchip wich abidith,
 Witß them the world apone the laif dewidith,
 And if he, wich fshal eftur the fucced,
 By larges fpend, of quibich that yhow had dreid, 1804
 He of the world comendit is and profit,
 And yow ftant furth of euery thing difputit,
 The puple faith and demyth thus of thee,
 "Now is he gone, a werray vrech was hee, 1808
 And he the wich that is our king and lord
 Both wertew haith & larges in accorde,
 Welcum be he!" and fo the puple foundith
 Thus through thi viß his wertew mor aboundith, 1812
 And his vertew the more thi wice furth fchawith
 Wharfor zhe, wich that princes ben y knawith,
 Lat not yhour vrechit hart so yhow dant,
 That he that cummyth next yhow may awant 1816
 To be mor larg, nore more to be commendit,
 Best kept Is the Riches well difpendit
 O zhe, the wich that kinges ben, fore fham
 Remembrith yhow, this world hath bot o naaß 1820
 Of good or ewill, efter zhe ar gone¹
 And wyßly tharfor cheffith yhow the toß

Knowest thou
not what shall be
thy part when
thou passest
away from this
world?

Virtue and hon
our will alone re-
main

And if thy suc
cessor be liberal
he will be com
mended of the
world

[Fol 23 a.]

and his virtue will
abound through
thy vice

Riches well spent
are the best kept

¹ MS has "by"

² MS has "subiet"

	Wich moft accordith to nobilitee, And knytith larges to yhour hie degre For qwhar that fredome In O prince Ringnis, It bryngith In the victory of kingis, And makith realmys and puple both to dout, And fubectis ¹ of the cuntie al about	1824 1828
Whoso will be a conqueror let him not reek to give largely	And qwho that thinkith ben o conquerour, Suppos his largeß funquhat pas myfour, Ne rak he nat, bot frely ifith ay, And as he wynyth, beis var al way To mych nor 3hit to gudy that he hold, Wich fal the hartis of the puple colde	1832
Both love and fear spring from liberality	And low and radour cummyth both two Of larges, Reid and 3he fal fynd It fo Alexander this lord the waird that wan, First with the fucid of larges he began,	1836
Alexander gave so liberally,	And as he wynith ifith lugely, He rakith No thing bot of chuechly, Wharfor of hyme fo paffith the Renown,	1840
that many cities desired to have such a lord,	That many o cetee, and many o strang towñ Of his worfchip that herith the Recorde, Diffirith fo to haveing fich o lorde,	1844
and offered them selves peaceably to him, though they weis manly men of war	And offerith them with outen ftrok of fpere, Suppos that thei war manly men of were, But only for his gentilleß that thei Have hard, and fo he lout was al-way For his larges, humiltee, and manhed, With his awn folk, that neuer more, we Reid,	1848
[Fol 23 b]	For al his weris nor his gret trawell, In al his tym that thei hyme onys falli, Bot in his worfchip al thar befynes Thei fet, and lewith in to no diftres, Whar throw the fuerd of victory he berith	1852
Many princes bear the palm of	And many prince full oft the palm werth,	1856

¹ Or "subettas"

As has ben hard, by larges, of before,		victory through liberality
In conquering of Ragnis & of glore		
And wrechitnes Richt fo, in the contrar,		
Haith Realmys maid ful defolat & bare,	1860	while miserliness hath made realms desolate
And kingis broght doun from ful hie estat,		
And who that Red ther old bukis, wat		
The viciis lef, the wertew have in mynde,		
And takith larges In his awn kynd,	1864	
A myd fstanding of the viciis two,		Choose the mean between. prodigality and avarice
Prodegaltee and awerice also		
Wharfor her-of It nedith not to more,		
So mych ther-of haith clerkis vrit to-fore	1868	
Bot who the wertw of larges & the law		Whoso chooses to be liberal
Sal cheß, mot ned confidur well & knaw		
In to hyme-felf, and thur thre wnderfstande,		
The fubtitans first, the powar of his land,	1872	must understand three things the amount he has to whom he giveth and the fit time for giving
Whome to he iffith, and the causß wharfore,		
The nedful tyme awatith evermore		
Kepith thir thre, for qwho that fal exced		
His rent, he fallith fodandly in nede	1876	
And fo the king, that on to myfter drowis,		(1) The king that becomes <i>indigent</i> overthrows his subjects
His subiettes and his puple he our-thrawis,		
And them difpolzeth both of lond and Rent,		
So is the king, fo is the puple schent	1880	
For-quh the voice It ferik[1]th vp ful ewyne		For the voice of the oppressed shrieketh up ceaselessly to heaven
With out abaid, and passith to the hewyne,		
Whar god hyme felf refawth ther the crye		
Of the opprefioun and the teranny,	1884	
And with the fuerd of wengans doun y fmytith,		and God smiteth down with the sword of ven- geance
The wich that caruith al to for, and bitith,		
And hyme diftroyth, as has ben hard or this		
Of euery king that wirkith sich o mys	1888	
For ther is few efchapith them, It fall		
Boith vpone hyme & his fuceffione fall,		
For he forfuth haith ifyne hyme the wond		For God hath given the king the wand of jus- tice
To Iustefy and Reull in pece his lond,	1892	[Fol 24 a]

	The puple all submytit to his curc , And he aȝan one to no creatur Save only fhall vn to his gode obey And if he priffith fo fu out of the wey,	1896
and if he op- presses them whom he should ru e	Them to oppreß, that he fhuld reul & gñd, Ther heritag, there gwdis to dewide, Ye, vnder whome that he moft nedis ftond,	
God shall stretch His mighty hand for correction	At correccioun e fal frek his myghty hond, Not every day, bot fhall it onys fall On hyme, mayhap, and his fuccedione all	1900
Herein, alas ' is the blindness of kinges	In this, allace ' the blyndis of the kinges, And Is the fall of princis and of Rygnis The moft wertew, the gret Intellegens,	1904
The blessed token of a king s wis dom is for him to re train his hand from his people s riches	The bleßt tokyne of wyfdom and prudens Ifß, in o king, for to refiren his honde Frome his pupleis Riches & thei lond Mot every king have this wice in mynd In tyme, and not when that he ned fynde ' And in thi larges berth war, I pryy,	1908
(?) Choose a fl ting tyme (*) Take care to whom you live	Of nedful tyme, for than is beft alway Awysß the ek quhome to that thow falt if, Of there fam, and ek how that thei leif ,	1912
Let not the vir tuous and the vicious stand in the same degree	And of the wertws and vicious folk alfo, I the befeich dewidith well thir two, So that thei ftond nocht in[to] o degree , Discreccioun e fall mak the diuerfitee, Wich clepith the moder of al vertewis	1916
Beware of flat- tery	And berth war, I the befeich of this, That is to fay of flatry, wich that longith To court, and al the kinges larges fongith The vertuous man no thing thar of refaunth, The flattereris now fo the king diffaunth	1920
	And blyndith them that wot no thing, I wysß, When thei do well, or quhen thei do o myß , And latith kinges oft til wnderftonde Thar vicious, and ek ye faltis of ther lond	1924
		1928

In to the realme about o king Is holde		
O flatterere were than is the stormys cold,		A flatterer is worse than a storm or a pestilence
Or pestelens, and mor the realme anoyith ,		
For he the law and puple both dystroyith	1932	
And in to principall ben ther three thingis,		[Fol 24 b]
That cauffith flattereris stonding w th the kingis ,		Three things make flatterers in favour
And on, It is the blyndit Ignorans		First the blind ignorance of kings
Of kingis, wich that hath no gouernans	1936	
To wnderstond who doith sich o myȝ ,		
But who that fareȝ schewith hym, I wyȝ,		
Most suffiȝith and best to his plesans		
Wo to the realme that havith sich o chans !	1940	
And secundly, quhar that o king Is		Secondly where a king is vicious himself
Wecurȝ hyme-self, he cheriȝith, ywys,		
Al them the wich that one to viciis foundith,		
Whar throw that viciis and flattery ek aboundith	1944	
The thrid, is the ilk schrewit harmful wice,		Thirdly where the king is so foolish that he knows their flattery yet with draws from improving them
Wich makith o king w th in hyme-self so nyce,		
That al thar flattry and ther gilt he knowith		
In to his wit, and ȝhit he hyme w th drowith	1948	
Them to repref, and of ther viciis he wot ,		
And this It is wich that dissembling hot,		
That in no way accordith for o king		
Is he not fet abus apone his Ringne,	1952	
As fouerane his puple for to lede ?		
Whi schuld he spare, or quhom of schuld he died		Why should a king spare to say the truth ?
To say the treuth, as he of Right is hold ?		
And if so ware that al the kingis wold,	1956	
When that his legis comytat ony wyȝe,		
As berth not to schamful, nore to nyce,		
That thei presume that he is negligent,		
But als far as he thinkith that thei myȝ went,	1960	He should reprove without dissembling, as it is fitting
But dissembling repewith as afferis ,		
And pwnice them quhar pwnyȝing Requeris,		
Sauf only mercy in the tyme of ned		
And fo o king he schuld his puple led,	1964	

- That no trefpaf, that cummyth in his way,
 Shuld paf his hond wne pwnift away ,
 Nore no good deid in to the famyn degree,
 Nore no wertew, fuld wn Reuardid bee 1968
- Then flattery,
 that now is high,
 should be low
- Than flattry fhuld, that now is he, be low,
 And wice from the kingis court with drow ,
 His minifteris that fhuld the Iuftice reull,
 Shuld kep well furt^h of quiet & reull, 1972
- That now, god wat, as It conferwit Is,
 The ftire is loft, and al is gon amys ,
- [Fol 25 a]
- And vertew fhuld hame to the court hyme dref,
 That exillth goith in to the wildernes 1976
- If a king thus
 stood like his own
 degree his people
 would be virtu
 ous and wise
- Thus if o king ftud lyk his awn degree,
 Wertwis and wyf than fhuld his puple bee,
 Only fet by vertew hyme to plef,
 And fore adred his wifdom to difplef 1980
- And if that he towart the viciis draw,
 His folk fall go on to that ilk law ,
 What fhall hyme plef that wil nou^t ellis fynd,
 Bot ther apon fetith al ther mynde 1984
- Thus the rule of
 his people and
 kingdom stand
 erh only in the
 king s virtue
- Thus only in the wertew of o king
 The reull ftant of his puple & his ungne,
 If he be wyf and, but diffemblyng, fehewis,
 As I have faid, the viciis one to fehrewis 1988
- And fo thus, fir, It ftant apone thi will
 For to omend thi puple, or to fpill ,
 Or have thi court of vertewis folk, or fullis ,
- Since thou art
 wholly master of
 the schools teach
 them and they
 shall gladly
 learn
- Sen yow art holl maifter of the feoullis 1992
- Teichith them, and thei fal gladly leir,
 That is to fay, that thei may no thing heir¹
 Sauf only wertew towart thyn eftat ,
 And cherrif them that wertewis ben algant 1996
- And thinkith what that wertew is to thee ,
 It pleffith god, vphaldith thi degree "

¹ Or, "leir." MS apparently has "leir," corrected to "leir "

- "Maister," quod he, "me think ryght profitable
 Yowr confeill Is, and wonder honorable 2000 Arthur considers
 his counsel pro-
 fitable
 For me, and good, ryght well I have confaut,
 And in myne hartis Inwartneß refaut
 I fhall fulfill and do yowr ordynans
 Als far of wit as I have fuffifans, 2004
 Bot y befeich yow, in til hartly wyß,
 That of my drem þhe fo to me dewyß,
 The wich fo long haith occupied my mynd,
 How that I fhall no maner fucour fynd 2008 He beseeches him
 to expound his
 drem
 Bot only throw the watter lyon, & fyne
 The leich that is withouten medyfyne,
 And of the confell of the flour, wich ayre
 Wonderis lyk that no man can duclar 2012 how he shall only
 find help through
 the water lion,
 the leech and the
 flower
 "Now, fir," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
 What thei betakyne fhall I ichaw to the,
 Such as the clerkis at them fpecifit,
 Thei vñt no thing what thei fignefit 2016 The maister's ex-
 planation
 [Fol 20 b]
 The watter lyone Is the god wernay,
 God to the lyone is lyknyt many way,
 But thei have hyme In to the watter feñ,
 Confufit were ther wittis al, y weñ, 2020 The water is
 men's fragility,
 The watter was ther awn frageltee,
 And thar treifpas, and thar Inequitee
 In to this world, the wich thei ftond y-clofit,
 That was the watter wich thei have fupposit, 2024
 That haith there knowlag maad fo Inperfyte,
 Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
 As clowdy watter, was euermore betweñ,
 That thei the lyone perfytly hath nocht feñ, 2028 whereby they see
 not the lion per-
 fectly
 Bot as the watter, wich was yer awn fyne,
 That euermor thei ftond confufit In
 If thei haith ftond in to religioñ clen,
 Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen, 2032 Had men been
 always religious
 they had seen the
 lion not in water,
 but clearly
 Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abus,
 Eternaly whar he fhall not remufe

- And eue~~r~~more in vatte~~r~~ of fyne vas hee
 For quh~~e~~ It is Impoffeble for to bee,¹ 2036
- The world is en-
closed in the
darkness of their
sin And thus the world, wich that thei ar In,
 Y clofit Is in dyrknes of thei fyne,
 And ek the thikneß of the an between
 The lyone mad in vattu to be fen 2040
 For It was noch~~t~~ bot ftrenth of ther clergy
 Wich thei have here, and It is bot ertly,
 That makith them there icsouns dewyß,
 And fe the lyone thus in ertly wyß 2044
- The Lion is God s
Son Jesu Christ This is the lyone, god, and goddis sone,
 Ihesu crift, wich ay in hewyne fal wonne
 For as the lyone of euey beft is king,
 So is he lord and maifter of al thing, 2048
 That of the bleffit vyrgyne vas y-boie
 Ful many a natur the lyone haith, quhar-foie
 That he to god refemblyt is, bot I
 Lyk not mo at this tyme specify 2052
 This is the lyone, thar-of have yow no dred,
 That fhall the help and comfort In thi ned
- T**he fentens here now woll I the defyne
 Of hyme, the lech wit~~h~~outen medyfyne, 2056
 Wich is the god that euey thing hath vioght
- [Fol 28 a] For yow may know that vther Is It noght,
 As furgynis and fescianis, wich that delith
 Wit~~h~~ mortell thinges, and mortell thinges helyth, 2060
- Not as surgeons, And al thar art is in to medyfyne,
 As it is ordanit be the mycht dewyne,
 As plaste~~r~~is, drinkes, and anouyntmentis² feir, 2064
 And of the qualyte watyng of the yher ,
 And of the planetis difpoficioune,
 And of the naturis of compleccyounne,
 And in the diuerß changing of hwmowris
 Thus wnder reull lyth al there cwr~~i~~s , 2068
- whose art is in
medicine
- and in plaisters,
drinks and vari-
ous ointments
who know the
quality of the
year and the dis-
position of the
planets

¹ "see" (?)² MS "anoñytmētis," or "anoūytmētis"

- And yhit thei far as blynd man In the way,
 Oft quhen that deith thar craft list to assay
 Bot god, the wich that is the foueran lech,
 Nedith no maner medyfyne to fech , 2072
 For ther is no Infyrmyte, nore wound,
 Bot as hyme lykith al is holl and found
 So can he heill Infyrmyte of thoght,
 Wich that one erdly medefyne can noght, 2076
 And als the faul that to confusioune goith,
 And haith with hyme and vther *partes* both,
 His dedly wound god helyth fiome the ground ,
 On to his cure no medyfyne is found 2080
 This Is his *mycht* that neuer more ihall fyne,
 This is the leich *withouten* medyfyne ,
 And If that yhow at confessioune hath ben
 And makith the of al thi *fynnis* clen, 2084
 Yow art than holl, and this ilk samyn is he
 Schall be thi leich In al neceffitee
 Now of the flour y woll to the discern
 This is the flour that haith¹ the froyt etern, 2088
 This is the flour, this fadith for no schour,
 This is the flour of euery flouis floure ,
 This is the flour, of quhom the froyt vas born,
 This ws redemyt efter that we war lorn , 2092
 This Is the flour that euer spryngith new,
 This is the flour that changith neuer hew ,
 This is the vyrgyne, this is the bleffit flour
 That Ihesu bur that is our salweour, 2096
 This flour *wnwemmyt* of hir wurginitee ,
 This is the flour of our felicittee,
 This is the flour to quhom ve shuld exort,
 This is the flour not fessith to support 2100
 In prayere, confell, and in byffynes,
 Vs catifis ay In to our wrechitnes

But God can heal
 infirmity of
 thought,

and also the soul
 that goeth to con-
 fusion

He shall be thy
 leech in all neces-
 sity

The flower is she
 of whom the
 eternal fruit was
 born,

the virgin that
 bore the Saviour,

that ceaseth not
 to support us
 catifis

[Fol 26 b]

¹ The word, though indistinct, is almost certainly "huth"
 Stevenson has "high," but this gives no sense

- On to hur sone, the quich hur counsell herith,
 This is the flour that al our gladnes stenth, 2104
 Through whos prayer mony one is sawit
 That to the deth eternaly war rclawit,
 Ne was hir hartly fuplicatione
 This is the flour of our saluatioune, 2108
 Next hur sone, the floyt of euery flour,
 This is the sam thrt shal be thi succour,
 If that the lykith hartly Reueians
 And seruice zeld one to hir excellens, 2112
 Syne worchship hur with al thi byffynes,
 Sche sal thi harm, sche fall thi ned redies
 Sche fall fice counsell if one to the two,
 The lyone and the fouerane lech also, 2116
 Yow fall not Ned yi drem for to dispai,
 Nor zhit no thing that is in thi contrare
 Now—quod the maister—yow may well wnderstand
 Tueching thi drem as I have born on hande, 2120
 And planly haith the mater al declarith,
 That yhow may know of wich yow was disparith
 The lech, the lyone, and the flour also,
 Yow worchship them, yow serue them euermo, 2124
 And ples the world as I have said befor, e
 In gouernans thus stondith al thi glore
 Do as yow list, for al is in thi honde,
 To tyne thi-self, thi honore, and thi londe, 2128
 Or lyk o prince, o conquerour, or king,
 In honore and in worchship for to Runge
 The king reples “Now,” quod the king, “I fell that the support
 Of yhour counsell haith don me fisch comfort, 2132
 Of euery raddour my hart is In to es,
 To zhour command, god will, y sal obeß
 Bot o thing is yneuch wn to me,
 How galiot makith his awant that he 2136
 Shall have the knyght, that only by his honde
 And manhed, was defendour of my londe,

through whose
prayer are many
saved

She shall so
counsel the lion
and the leech
that thou need
not despair

Do now as thou
list, for all is in
thy hand.

The king reples

that his heart is
eased from fear,

but inquires if
Galiot will win
over the red
knight and what
is his name

- If that fhall fall y pray yhow tellith me,
 And quhat he hecht, and of quhat lond is hee?" 2140
 "What that he hecht yow fshall no forye^r know,
 His dedis fall her-afterwart hyme fchaw , The master
 Bot *contrar* the he fshall be found no way evades reply
 No more thar of as now y will the fay " ¹ 2144
 With that the king haith at his maister tone [Fol 27 a]
 His leve, one to to his cuntre for to goñe , The king and the
 And al the oft makith none abyde, host return home
 To passing home anone thei can prowid , 2148
 And to fir gawane thei haith o lytter maad,
 Ful fore ywound, and hyme on with them haade
 [T]he king, as that the ftoiy can declar,
 Passith to o Cete that was Right fair, 2152 The king sojourns
 And clept cardole, In to wals, was, twenty four days
 For that tyme than It was the nefeft place, at Cardole in
 And thar he foornyt xxiiij^{ti} days Wales
 In ryall festing, as the auttore fays 2156
 So discretly his puple he haith cherit,
 That he thar hartis holy haith *conquerit*
 And fir gawan, helyt holl and found
 Be xv dais he was of euery wounde , 2160 Sir Gawan is
 Right blyth therof in to the court war thei healed in fifteen
 And fo befell, the xxiiij² day, days
 The king to fall in to o hewynes,
 Right ate his table siting at the mes , 2164 The king becomes
 And fir gawan cummyth hyme before, sits at the mess
 And said hyme, "fi, yhour thoght is al to foie, Gawan rebukes
 Confidering the diuerf knyghtis fere him
 Ar of wncouth and strang landis here " 2168
 The king anfuert, as in to matalent,
 "Sir, of my thocht, or 3hit of myne entent, The king answers
 Yhe have the wrang me to repref, for quhy in ' matalent
 Thai lewith none that fhuld me blam, for I 2172

¹ At the bottom of the page is the catch word, "With that the king"

² Ms "xxviiij," altered to "xxiiij"

- that he was
 thinking of the
 worthiest knight
 living
- Was thinkand one the worthiest that lewyte,
 That al the worship In to armys prewyte,
 And how the thonk of my defens he had,
 And of the wow that gahot haith mad 2176
 But I have sen, when that of my houshold
 That was, and of my falowship, that wold,
 If that thei wift, quhat thing schuld me ples,
 Thei wald nochte leif for trawell nor for es 2180
 And sum tyme It pleswmyt was & fud,
 That in my houshold of al this world I had
 The flour of knyghted and of chevalry,
 Bot now thar-of y se the contrarye, 2184
 Sen that the flour of knyghted is away "
 "Schir," quod he, "of Resone suth yhe say,
 [Fol 27 b] And if god will, In al this waird so Round
 He sal be foght, if that he may be found " 2188
 Gawan departs to
 seek Lancelot
- Than gawan goth with o knyghtly chere,
 At the hal-dure he faith In this maner
 "In this pafag who lykith for to wend?
 It is o Iohne most for to comend 2192
 That In my tyme In to the court fallith,
 To knyghtis wich that chewellry lowith
 Or trawell In to armys for to hant,
 And lat no knyght fra thyne furt hyme awant 2196
 That it denyith,"—with that onon thei ros,
 Al the knyghtis, and frome the burdis goß
 The king that fauch In to his hart was wo,
 And said, "for gawan, nece, why dois yow so? 2200
 Knowis yow nochte I myne houshold fuld encreß,
 In knyghted, and in honore, and largess?
 And now yow thinkith mak me dissolat
 Of knyghtis, and my hous tranfulat, 2204
 To sek o knyght, and It was neuer more
 Hard sich o femble makith o before "
 Gawan explains
- "Sir," quod he, "als few as may yhow pless,
 For what I said was no thing for myne es, 2208

Nor for desir of falowfchip, for why
 To paß alone, but cumpany, think I,
 And ilk knyght to paß o fundry way,
 The mo thei paß the fewar eifchef thay, 2212
 Bot thus fhal pas no mo bot as yhow left "
 "Takith," *quod* he, "of quhom þhe lykith beft,
 Fourty in this paßag for to go," Arthur assigns
 At this *command* and gawan chefit fo him forty com
 2216 panions
 Fourty, quhich that he lourt, & that was
 Richt glad in to his falowfchip to pas
 [A]nd furth thei go, and al anarmyt thei
 Come to the king, *withhouten* more delay, 2220
 The relykis brocht, as was the *maner* tho,
 When any knyghtis frome the court fuld go
 Or when the paffit, or quhen thei com, thei fwor
 The trowth to fchaw of euery aduentur 2224
 Su gawan knelyng to his falowis fais,
 "Yhe lordis, wich that in this feking gais,
 So many noble and worthi knyghtis ar þhe,
 Me think in wayne yhour trauel fhuld noch be, 2228
 For aduentur is non so gret to pref,
 As I fuppone, nor þhe fal It eifchef,
 And if þhe lyk as I that fhal dewyß,
 Yhour oth to fwer In to the famyne wyß 2232
 Myne oth to kep,"—and that thei vndertak,
 How euer fo that he his oth mak
 It to conferf, and that thei have all fworn
 Than gawan, wich that was the king befor, 2236
 On kneis fwore, "I fal the futh duclar
 Of euery thing when I agan Repar,
 Nor neuer more aþhane fal I return,
 Nore in o place long for to fuorn 2240
 Whill that the knyght or verray evydens
 I have, that fhal be toknis of credens "
 His falowfchip abasit of that thing,
 And als therof anoyt was the king, 2244

Arthur assigns
him forty com
panions

These knights
arm themselves

and bring the
relics whereon
to swear to shew
the truth

[Fol. 28a]

Gawane swears
not to return till
he has found
Lancelot, or evi
dence of him

- Whar that al thithingis goith & cumyth foñ "
- "Madem," *quod* he, "yhour plesance mot be doñe " 2280
- With that the knyght one to his chalmer goith, The knight re
tires
- And the lady hir makith to be wroith
- Azanis hyme, but futhly vas sche not,
- For he al out was mor in to hir thocht 2284
- Than schapith fhe azane the ferd day,
- And richly sche gan hir self aray ,
- Syne clepit haith apone her cufynes,
- And faith, "y will one to the court me dres , 2288 Before going to
the court
- And malice I have schawin on to 3hon knyght,
- For quhy he wold nocht schew me quhat he hicht,
- Bot so, I-wyß, It is nocht in my thocht,
- For worthy non In to this erth is wrocht 2292
- Tharfor I pray, and hartly I requer she prays her
cousin to take
care of him
- 3he mak hyme al the cumpany and chere,
- And do hyme al the worfchip and the es,
- Excep his honore, wich that may hym ples , 2296
- And quhen I cum deluwerith hyme als fre
- As he is now ,—"ne have no dred," *quod* sche
- [T]he lady partit, and hir lef hath ton,
- And by hir Iorne to the court Is gon 2300 The lady meets
Arthur at Logris
- The king hapnit at logris for to bee,
- Wich of his realme was than the chef cete ,
- And haith hir met, and In til hartly wyß
- Refaut her, and welcummyt oft fyß , 2304
- And haith hir home one to his palice brocht,
- Whar that no dante nedith to be focht,
- And maid hir cher with al his ful entent
- Eft supir one to o chalmer ar thei went, 2308
- The king and sche, and ek the quen al thre ,
- Of hir tithandis at hir than askit hee,
- And what that hir one to the court had brocht?
- "Sir," *quod* sche, "I come¹ not al for nocht , 2312 and inqures wht
has brought her

¹ MS "conne "

- She says she has
 a friend who has
 made a challenge,
 [Fol 29 a]
- I have o frend haith o dereyne ydoo,
 And I can fynd none able knyght tharto ,
 For he the wich that in the contrar Is
 Is hardy, ftrong, and of gret kyne, I wyß , 2316
 Bot, It is said, If I mycht have with me
 þour knyght, quich in the last affemble
 Was in the feld, and the red armys bur,
 In his manhed y mycht my causß affur , 2320
 And yhow, fir, richt hartly I exort
 In to this ned my myfter to support "
 "Madem, by faith one to the quen I aw
 That I best loue, the knyght I neuer saw 2324
 In nerneß by which that I hyme knew ,
 And ek gawane Is gan hyme for to few
 With other fourty knyghtis In to cumpany "
 The lady smylt at ther fanteffy , 2328
 The quen thar with presumyt wel that sche
 Knew quhat he was, and said, "madem, If þhe
 Knowith of hyme what that he is, or quhar,
 We þhow besech til ws for to declar " 2332
 "Madem," quod sche, "now be the faith that I
 Aw to the king and yhow, as for no why
 To court I cam, but of hyme to Inquere ,
 And fen of hyme I can no tithingis here, 2336
 Nedlyngis to-morn homwart mon I fair "
 "Na," quod the king, "madem, our son It waire ,
 þhe fal remayne her for the qwenys fak ,
 Syne shal þhe of our best knyghtis tak " 2340
 "Sir," quod sche, "I pray þow me excusß,
 For quhy to paß nedis me behuß ,
 Nor, fen I want the knyght which I have socht,
 Wtheris with me to have desir I nocht, 2344
 For I of otheris have that may suffice "
 Bot þht the king hir prayt on sich wyß,
 That sche remanit whill the thrid day ,
 Syne tuk hir leif to pasing hom hir way 2348
- which the red
 l might could best
 maintain
- Arthur repes
 that Gawane is
 gone to seek him
- The queen asks
 the lady if she
 knows where he
 is
- She replies no
 and proposes to
 return
- Arthur prays her
 to stay
- She remains till
 the thrid day

- It nedis not the festing to declar
 Maid one to hir, nor company nor fare,
 Sche had no knyght, sche had no damyfeill,
 Nor thei richly rewardit war and well 2352
 Now goith the lady homwart, and sche
 In her entent defyrus Is to fee
 The flour of knyghted and of chevelry,
 So was he pryfit and hold to euery wy 2356
The lady, which one to hir palace come,
 Bot of schort time remanith haith at home
 When sche gart bryng, *with*outen Recidens,
 With grete effere this knyght to hir *presens*, 2360
 And said hyme, "for, so mekil have I *focht*
 And knowith that be-for I knew *nocht*
 That If yhow lyk I wil yhou Ransome mak'
 "Madem, gladly, wil zhe *wich*lauf to tak 2364
 Efter that as my powar may atten,
 Or that I may *prowid* be ony men"
 "Now, for," sho said, "forfute It fal be so,
 Yhe fal have thre, and cheif yhow on of tho, 2368
 And if yhow lykith them for to refus,
 I can no mor, but zhe fal me excus,
 Yhe nedis not futen yhour aduentur
 Contynualy In ward for til endur" 2372
 "Madem," *quod* he, "and I yhow hartly pray,
 What that thei say¹ zhe wald *wich*lauf to say?"
 "[T]he first," *quod* sche, "who hath in to the cheif
 Of low yhour hart, and if zhe may *dere*n? 2376
 The next, yhour nam, the which ze fal not lye?
 The thrid, if *ever* zhe think of cheualry
 So mekil worchip to atten in feild
 Apone o day in aimys wnder scheld, 2380
 As yat zhe dyd the famyne day, when zhe
 In red armys was at the affemlee?"

She is sumptu-
ously enter-
tained

and returns
home

[Fol 29 b]

Soon after, she
sends for Lance-
lot

and proposes to
ransom him

on one of three
conditions

Either he must
tell whom he
loves

or declare his
name
or say if he ex-
pects again to
equal his former
exploits

¹ So MS We should probably read "bee"

	"Madem," <i>quod</i> he, "is thar non vther way Me to redem, but only thus to fay	2384
	Of thingis, which that Rynyth me to blam, Me to awant my lady or hir name? But If that I moft schawin furth that one, What suerte schal I have for to gone	2388
	At libertee out of this danger free? ¹ "Schir, for to dred no myfter is," <i>quod</i> shee, "As I am trew and faithfull woman hold, þhe sal go fre quhen one of thir is told"	2392
He refuses to tell his lady's name,	"Madem, yhour will non vther ways I may, I mone obey, and to the first y fay, ¹ [I]s, to declar the lady of myne hart, My goft sal rather of my brest aftart"—	2396
	Whar-by the lady fayndit al for nocht The lowe quiche long hath ben In to his thocht—	
of his own	"And of my nam, schortly for to fay, It stondith so that one no wys I may	2400
[Fol 30 a]	Bot of the thrid, madem, I se that I Mon fay the thing that tuechith velany, For futh it is I traft, and god before, In feld that I sal do of armys more	2404
but declares that he trusts to do more than ever before, and re- quires his liberty	Than euer I did, if I <i>commandit</i> bee And now, madem, I have my libertee, For I have said I neuer thocht to fay" "Now, <i>for</i> ," <i>quod</i> sche, "when euer þhe wil ye may,	2408
She begs of him a boon	Bot o thing Is, I yhow hartly raquer, Sen I have hold yhow apone such maner Not as my fo, that þhe vald grant me till "Madem," <i>quod</i> he, "It sal be as þhe will"	2412
	"Now, <i>for</i> ," <i>quod</i> sche, "it is no thing bot þhe Remaȝn with ws wn to the assemble, And euery thyng that In yhour myfter lȝis I fall gar ordan at yhour awn dewys,	2416

¹ A space is here left for an illuminated letter

- And of the day I fhall yow certefy
 Of the affemble þhe fal not pas therby "
 "Madem," *quod* he, "It fal be as yhow list "
 "Now, *fir*," *quod* fche, "and than I hald It beft, 2420
 That þhe remañ lyk to the famyne dogre
 As that þhe war, yat non fal wit that þhe
 Deluerit war , and in to facret wyf
 Thus may þhe be , and now yhe fal dewyf 2424
 What armys that yhow lykyth I gar mak "
 "Madem," *quod* he, "armys al of blak "
 With this, this knyght is to his chalmer goñ ,
 The lady gan ful prewaly diffpone 2428
 For al that longth to the knyght, in feild ,
 Al blak his horß, his armour, and his fcheld,
 That nedful is, al thing fche well prewidith ,
 And in hur keping thus with hir he bidith 2432
 Suppos of love fche takyne hath the charg,
 Sche bur It clos, ther-of fche vas not larg,
 Dot wyfly fche abftenit hir diffir,
 For ellas quhat, fche knew, he was afyre , 2436
 Thar for hir wit hir worfchip haith defendit,
 For in this world thar was nan mor commendit,
 Boith of difcreccioune and of womanhed,
 Of gouernans, of nurtur, and of farhed 2440
 This knyght with hir thus al this whil mon duell,
 And furtþ of arthur fumthing wil we tell—
 [T]hat walkyng vas furtþ in to his Regiounis,
 And foiornyt in his ceteis and his townis, 2444
 As he that had of vidome fufficyans
 He kept the lore of mafter amytaus
 In ryghtwyfnes, In fefting and larges,
 In chernfing cumpany and hamlynes , 2448
 For he was buffy and was deligent,
 And largely he iffith, and difpent
 Rewardis, boith one to the pur & riche,
 And holdith feft throw al the þher eliche 2452

and enquires
 what arms he
 would like to
 have made for
 him. He chooses
 black armour

which is pro-
 vided

She keeps her
 love close

being commend-
 ed for discretion

The story returns
 to Arthur—

[Fol. 30 b]

who obeys the
 counsel of Amy-
 taus

and gives away
 largely

In al the warld passing gan his name,
 He chargit not bot of encief and fame,
 And how his puples hartis to empleß,
 Thar gladnes ay was to his hart most es 2456
 He rakith not of riches nor treffour,
 Bot to dispend one worschip & honour,
 He isith riches, he isith lond and rent,
 He chemifyth them with wordis eloquent, 2460
 and thus gams his
 people s love So that thei can them vitrally propone
 In his seruice thar lyves to dispone
 So gladith them his homely contynans,
 His chemifyng, his wordis of plesans, 2464
 His cumpany, and ek his mery chere,
 His gret rewardis, and his iftis fere
 Thus hath the king non vthir besynes
 Bot chemfing of knyghtis and larges, 2468
 To mak hyme felf of honour be commend,
 And thus the 3her he drywith to the ende

EXPLICIT SECUNDA PARS, INCIPIT TERCIA PARS

[BOOK III]

- The long dirk pafag¹ of the vintei, & the lycht
 Of phebus *comprochit with his mycht*, 2472 The sun ascends
in his altitude
- The which, afcending In his altitud,
 Awodith saturn *with his ftormys Rude*,
 The foft dew one fra the hewyne doune valis²
 Apone the erth, one hill: and on valis, 2476 The foft dew
falls down from
heaven
- And throw the fobir & the mwft hwmouris
 Vp nurist ar the erbis, and in the flouris
 Natur the erth of many diuerß hew
 Our fret, and cled *with the tendu new* 2480 Nature decks the
earth with vari-
ous hues The
birds may hude
- The birdis may them hiding in the grawis
 Wel frome the halk, that oft ther lyf berevis,
 And scilla hie afcending in the ayre,
 That every vight may heryng hir declar 2484 them from the
hawk in the
groves and Scilla
may ascend in
the air
- Of the feffone the paffing luftynes
 This was the tyme that phebus gan hym drefß
 In to the rame, and haith his courß bygown,
 Or that the trewis and the 3her vas Rown, 2488
- Which was y-fet of galiot and the king
 Of thar affemble, and of thar meting
 Arthur haith a xv dais before
 Affemblit al his barnag and more 2492
- That weryng wnder his fubeccioune,
 Or louth hyme, or longith to his crown,
 And haith his Iornay tone, *withhouten let*,
 On to the place the wich that was y fet, 2496 The tyme of com-
bat between
Galiot and the
king drew near
- Whar he hath found befor hyme mony o knyght
 That cummyng war *with al thar holl mycht*,

¹ So MS Should we read "pasith" ?² So MS It should be "falis"

Al enarmyt both *wit* spere & fcheld,
 And ful of lugis plantith haith the feld, 2500
 Hyme In the wer for to fuppoit and ferf
 At al ther mycht, his thonk for to differf
 And gawan, which was in the feking 3hit
 Of the gud knycht, of hyme haith got no wit, 2504
 Remembrith hyme apone the kingis day,
 And to his falowis one this wys can faye
 "To 3how is knowin the mater, in what wyf
 How that the king hath *wit* his ennemys 2508
 A certan day, that now comprochit nere,
 And one to ws war hewynes to here
 That he var in to perell or in to dreid,
 And we away and he of ws haith neid , 2512
 For we but hyme no thing may efchef,
 And he but ws in honore well may lef ,
 For, be he loft, we may no thing *wit*ftond,
 Our-felf, our honore we tyne, & ek our lond 2516
 Tharfor, I red we pas on to the king,
 Suppos our oth It hurt in to fum thing,
 And in the feld *wit* hyme for til endur,
 Of lyf or deth and tak our aduentur " 2520
 Thar-to thei ar contentit euerilkon,
 And but dulay the have thar lorney tofe
 When that the king them faw, in his entent
 Was of thar com Right wonder well content , 2524
 For he prefwmyt no thing that thei wold
 Have cummyne, but one furth to yer feking hold
 And thus the kinghis oft affemblit has
 A3ane the tyme, a3aine the day that vas 2528
 Y-ftatut and ordanit for to bee,
 And every thing hath fet in the dogre
 [A]nd galiot, that haith no thing for3het
 The termys quich that he befor had set, 2532
 Affemblit has, apone his beft maner,
 His folk, and al his other thingis fere,

Gawane remem-
bers the day

and proposes to
his fellows to go
to help the king

[Fol 81 b]

Arthur is well
content at their
coming

not expecting
them

Galiot also as
survives his folk

- That to o weryour longth to proud,
 And is y-come apone the tothir fyde
 Whar he befor was one than vas he two,
 And al his vthir artl3ery also
 He dowblith hath, that merwell was to fen ,
 And by the rewere lychtit one the greñ,
 And ftronghar thane ony wallit tounē
 His oft y bout yclofit in Randoune
 Thus war thei cummyne apone ather fyd
 Be-for the tyme, them-felf for to proud
 Or that the trewis was complet & rwn,
 Men mycht have fen one euery fid begwn
 Many a fair and knyghtly Iuperty
 Of lufly men, and of 3ong chevaly,
 Difyrus In to armys for to pruf ,
 Sum for wynyng, fum caufith vas for luf,
 Sum In to worfchip to be exaltate,
 Sum caufit was of wordis he & hate,
 That lykit not ydill for to ben ,
 A hundereth pair at onis one the gren
 Thr lufly folk thus can thar tyme difpend,
 Whill that the trewis goith to the ende
 The trewis pafit, the day is cummyne onofie,
 One euery fyd the can them to difpone ,
 And thai that war moft facret & moft dere
 To galiot, at hyme the can enquere,
 “ Who fal affemble one yhour fyd to morie ?
 To-nycht the trewis to the end is worne ”
 He anfuert, “ As yhit one to this were
 I ame awyfit I wil none armys bere,
 Bot If It ftond of more Neceffitee ,
 Nor to the feld will pas, bot for to fee
 Yhone knyght, the which that berth fch o fame ”
 Than clepit he the conquest king be name,
 And hyme commandit xxx thoufand tak
 A3aine the morne, and for the feld hyme mak
- 2536 doubling his
army and artil
lery
- 2540 and pitches on
the green by the
river
- 2544 Before the truce
is ended
- 2548 many combats
are seen between
lusty men
- 2552 a hundred pair
at once
- 2556 The truce past
- 2560 Galiot's friends
inquire who shall
fight on his side
on the morrow
- 2564 [Fol 32 a]
- 2568 He commands
the first con
quest king to
take 30 000 men

	And gawane haith, apone the toyer syde, Confulit his Eme he schuld for them prowid,	2572
	And that he schuld none armys to hyme tak Whill ¹ galiot will for the feld hyme mak "I grant," quod [he ²], " wharfor þhe mone dispone Yhow to the feld with al my folk to morne,	2576
Gawane leads Arthur s forces	And thinkith in yhour manhed and curage For to recit þhone folkis gret owtrag "	
The day comes	[T]he nycht is gone, vp goith the morow gray, The brycht fone fo cherith al the day	2580
	The knyghtis gone to armys than, in haft , One goith the scheildis and the helmys laft , Arthurs oft out our the furde thai 1yd And thai agane, apone the toyer syd,	2584
Arthurs men cross the ford		
Galiot s men as semble in a vale	Affemblit ar apone o lusty greyne, In to o waill, whar fone thai mycht be feyne Of knyghtis to gedde many o pair In to the feld affemblyng her & thair,	2588
	And ftedis which that haith thar maister lorne, ³ The knyghtis war done to the erth doune borne Sir esquyris, which was o manly knycht In to hyme felf, and hardy vas & wycht ,	2592
Sir Esquyris a manly knight	And in till armys gretly for to pryf, þhut he was puie, he prewit wel oft-fyf , And that tyme was he of the cumpanee Of galiot, bot efterwart was hee	2596
at that time of Galiot s com pany	With arthur , and that day In to the feld He come, al armyt Boith with spere and scheld, With ferf desir, as he that had na dout,	
attacks a band	And is affemblit ewyne apone a rowt ,	2600
	His spere is gone, the knycht goith to the erd, And out onon he pullith haith o fwerd , That day In armys prewit he rycht well His ftreth, his manhed , arthurs folk thai fell	2604
and proves his manhood		

¹ MS "Whill "² Omitted in MS³ MS has "borne " We should read "lorne," as in line 2092

Than galys gwynans, with o manly hart,
 Which broyer was of ywane the bastart,
 He cummyne Is onone one to the flour
 For conquering In armys of honour,
 And cownterit with esquyris hath so
 That¹ horß and man, al four, to erth thai go,
 And ftill o quhill lying at the ground
 With that o part of arthuris folk thei found
 Till gwyans, and haith hyme fone refkewit
 Azanis them til esquyris thei fewyt
 Of galiot's well xxxth knyghtis & mo,
 Gwyans goth done, and vthir vij alfo,
 The wich war tone & esquyris relewit
 Than ywane the anterus, aggrewit,
 With kynrnfmen one to the melle focht
 The hardy knyghtis, that one thar worchip thocht, 2620
 Cownterit them In myddis of the fcheld,
 Whar many o knyght was born doñ in the feld,
 Bot thei wich ware on galiotis part,
 So wnder takand nor of fo hardy hart
 Ne ware thei not as was in ye contrare
 Sur galys gwyans was refqwyt thare
 With his falowis, and esquyris don bore
 Thar al the batellis cam, withouten more,
 On ather part, and is affemblit fo
 Whar fyfty thoufand war thei, & no mo
 In o plane befyd the gret Ruwere
 Xxx thoufand one galiotis half thei vare,
 Of arthuris x thoufand and no mo
 Thei ware, and 3hit thai contentit them fo
 And in the feld fo manly haith born,
 That of thar fous haith the feld forfworñ
 The conquest king, wich the peiell knowith,
 Ful manly one to the feld he drowith,
 The lord fir gawan, couerit with his fcheld,

Than Galys Gwy
 nans brother of
 Ywan,

2608 [Fol 32 b]

encounters him
 and horse and
 man go all fou
 to earth

2612

Arthur s folk res
 cue Gwyans

2616

thirty knights of
 Galiot s arrive
 and rescue Es
 quyris

Next Ywan
 comes to the
 melle

2624

Galiot s men give
 way

2628

Gwyans is again
 rescued

2632

50 000 men are
 assembled
 30 000 on Galiot s
 side approach the
 river,
 and 10 000 on
 Arthur s

2636

Gawane puts the
 conquest-king to
 flight

¹ MS has "than"

	He rufchit in myddis of the feld,	2640
	And haith them fo in to his com affayt,	
	That of his manhed ware thei al affrait ,	
	No langer mycht thei contrar hyme endur,	
	Bot fled, and goth one to difcumfitune	2644
Galiot full of an ger and grief sends out a new band	And galiot, wich haith the difcumfit fen,	
	Fulfilhit ful of anger and of ten,	
	Incontinent he fend o new poware,	
	Whar with the feldis al our couerit ware	2648
[Fol 33a]	Of armyt ftedis both in plait and maill,	
	With knyghtis wich war redde to affaill	
Gawane draws his men together and shews them comfortable words	Sir gawan, feing al the gret fuppris	
	Of fois cummyng In to fich o wys,	2652
	Togiddir al his cumpany he drew,	
	And comfortable wordis to them fchew ,	
	So at the cummyng of thar ennemys	
They receyve the foe in manly wise	Thei them refauf, in fo manly wyf,	2656
	That many one felth deithis wound,	
	And wnder horf lyith fobing one the ground	
	This vther cummyth in to gret defir,	
	Fulfilhit ful of matelent and Ire,	2660
	So frefchly, with fo gret o confuens,	
	Thar ftrong affay hath don fich vyolens,	
	And at thar come arthuris folk fo led,	
	That thar war ay abayfit and adred	2664
	Bot gawan, wich that, by this worldis fame,	
	Of manhed and of knyghted bur the name,	
	Haith prewit [hym] well be experiens ,	
	For only In til armys his defens	2668
Gawane encour ages his fellows	Haith maid his falowis tak fich hardyment,	
	That manfully thei biding one the bent	
	Of his manhed war me well to raherf ,	
	The knyghtis throw the fcheldis can he parf,	2672
	That many one thar deithis haith refaut ,	
	None armour frome his mychty hond them faut,	
though their foes are three to one	3hit ay for one ther ennemys wor thre	

- Long mycht thei noch^t endur in fuch dugree , 2676
 The pref^t it was fo creuell & fo ftrong,
 In gret any and haith *continewit* longe,
 That, magre them, thei ned^{is} moft abak
 The way one to thar lug^{is} for to tak 2680
Sir gawan thar fufferith gret myfchef,
 And wonder^{is} in his knych^thed can he pref ,
 His faloufchip haith *merwell* that hym faw,
 So haith his fous that of his fuerd ftud aw 2684
 King arthur, that al this whill beheld
 The danger and the perell of the feld,
Sir ywan with o falowfchip he fende,
 Them In that ned to help & to defend, 2688
 Qwich fond them In to danger and in were,
 And enterit nere In to thar tentis were
Sir gawan fechtand was one fut At erde,
 And no defend, but only in his fwerde, 2692
 Azanis them both *with* fpere and fcheld
 Of galowa the knych^t goith to the erde ¹
 Thar was the batell fuyous and woud ²
 Of armyt knych^tis , to the grownde thar 3hud 2696
Sir ywane, that was a noble knyght,
 He fchew his ftrenth, he fchew thar *his* gret mycht,
 In al his tyme that neuer of before
 Off armyes, nore of knych^thed, did he more 2700
Sir gawan thar refkewit he of fors,
 Magre his fous, and haith hyme fet one horf
 That frome the firft *conqueft* king he wañ ,
 Bot *sir gawan* fo ewill was wondit than, 2704
 And in the feld fuppru^{it} was fo fore,
 That he the werf thar-of was euermore
 Thar fchew the lord *sir ywan his* curage,
 His manhed, & *his* noble waffolage , 2708
 And gawan, in his doing, wald noch^t irk ,

yet his men are
forced to retreat
to their tents

Arthur beholds
the peril of the
field and sends
Sir Ywan to help
them

[Fol 99 b]

who finds Sir
Gawane fighting
on foot with only
his sword

The battle was
furious and wood.

Sir Ywan rescues
Sir Gawane

who was so evilly
wounded that he
was the worse
thereof ever
more

¹ Read "felde"? ² MS "woud," but the "i" is undotted, and is therefore perhaps meant for the first stroke of a "u"

Thir tythyngis one to lancelot ar goñ,		Lancelot re- quests to see the lady
Whar of that he was wonder wo bygone,		
And for the lady haftely he sent,		
And sche til hyme, at his command, Is went	2748	
He saluft hir, and said, "madem, Is trew		and inquires if Gawane is really likely to die
Thir tithingis I hei report of new		
Of the assemble, and meting of the oft,		
And of <i>for</i> gawan, wich that fhuld be loft?	2752	
If that be fwth, adew the flour of armys,		
Now neuer more recoueryt be the harmys '		He laments over him
In hyme was manhed, curteffy, and trouth,		
Befy trawell In knyghted, ay but fleuth,	2756	
Humilyte, [and] gentrice, and cwrag,		
In hyme thar was no maner of outrage		
Allace ! knyght, allace ! what fhall yow fay ?		first apostro- phizing himself
Yow may complen, yow may bewail the day	2760	
As of his deith, and gladfchip aucht to fes,		
Barth menftrafy and festing at the des ,		
For of this lond he was the noll comfort,		
In tyme of ned al knyghted to fupport '	2764	
Allace ! madem, and I durft fay at zhe		and next blaming the lady for not having allowed him to be present in the battle
Al yhour beheft not kepit haith to me,		
Whar of that I was in to full belef		
Azane this day that I fchuld have my lef,	2768	
And nocht as cowntar thus fchamfully to ly		
Excludit in to cage frome chewalry,		
Whar othir knyghtis anarmyt on thar ftedis		
Hawntis ther zhouthhed in to knyghtly dedis "	2772	
"Sir," quod sche, "I red yhow not difplef,		
zhe may In tyme her-efter cum at es ,		[Fol 34 b]
For the thurd day Is ordanit, & fhall be		She promises he shall go to the next battle
Of the oftis a new assemble,	2776	
And I have gart ordan al the gere		
That longith to zour body for to were,		
Boith horf and armow In the famyne wyf		
Of fable, ewyne aftur zhour awn dewydf ,	2780	saying that his sable armour is ready

	And yhe fal her remayne one to the day , Syne may þhe paß, fore well þhe know the way ” “ I will obey, madem, to yhour entent ”	
	With that sche gooth, and to hir reft is went	2784
In the morn she takes her leave, to go to the court	One the morn aly vp sche ȝoß Withouth delay, and to the knyght sche ȝois, And twk hir lef, and said that scho vald fare On to the court, with outen any mare	2788
He kneels and thanks her often	Than knelit he, and thankit hir oft-fys, That sche fo mych hath done hyme of gentriß, And hir byhecht euer, at his myght, To be hir awn trew & stedfast knyght	2792
She goes unto the king,	Sche thonketh hyme, and fyne sche gooth her way On to the king, with owten more delay, Whar that in ¹ honour with king & qwen sche fall Rycht thonkfully refaunt be with all	2796
	Eft to sir gawan thai hir led, & sche Ryght gladly hyme defyrnt for to see, And sche hyme fond, and sche was glad tharfore, All vthir ways than was hir told before	2800
and finds Sir Gawane quite dif- ferent from what had been told her	The knyght, the wich in to hu keping vas, Sche had commandit to hir cussynece, Wich cherist hyme apone hir best manere, And comfort hyme, and maid hym ryght gud chere	2804
The lady s cousin cherishes Lance- lot in her best manner	[T]he days gooth, fo passith als the nyght, The thrid morow, as that the sone vas lyght, The knyght onon out of his bed aroß, The maden sone one to his chalmer goß, And sacretly his armour one hyme spent He tuk his lef, and fyne his way he went	2808
The thrid day the maiden goes to his chamber and fastens on his armour	Ful prewaly, ryght to the famyne greñ One the rewere, whar he befor had ben, Ewyne as the day [he] the first courß hath maad Alone ryght thar he howit, and abaade,	2812
He goes to the same green, be- side the river, as before		

¹ MS “with,” which is crossed out, and “in” inserted above, rather minutely written

- Behal ding to the bertes, whai the qweñ
 Befor at the affemble he had señ 2816 [l ol 3 a]
 He abides there
 alone lool ing to
 wards the para
 pet where he saw
 the queen
- Rycht fo the fone fchewith furth his lycht,
 And to his armour went is euery wycht ,
 One athur half the luffing is bygon,
 And many o fair and kny ch[t]ly courß is rown 2820 The jousting be
 gins
 The black knight
 still halts on his
 steed
- The blak kny ch[t]t 3hit howyns on his fted,
 Of al thar doing takith he no hed,
 Bot ay, apone the befynes of thocht,
 In beholding his ey departit noch t 2824 The lady beho'ds
 him and knows
 him but yet in
 quires who he is
- To quhom the lady of melyhalt beheld,
 And knew hyme by his armour & his fcheld,
 Qwhat that he was , and thus fche faid one hycht
 " Who is he 3one? who may he be, 3hone kny ch[t]t, 2828
 So full that hovith and fterith not his Ren,
 And feith the kny ch[t]tis rynyng one the greñ ?"
 Than al beholdith, and in princypale
 Sir gawan beholdith moft of all , 2832 thus calling the
 attention of tra
 wane
- Of melyha[l]t the lady to hyme maid
 Incontinent, his couche and gart be had
 Be fore o wyndew thore, as he my ch[t]t se
 The kny ch[t]t, the oft, and al the affemble 2836
 He lukith furth, and fone the kny ch[t]t hath fen,
 And, but delay, he faith one to the qwen,
 " Madem, if 3he remembir, fo it was
 The red kny ch[t]t in to the famyne place 2840 who saith to the
 queen
 Madam re-
 member that the
 red knight halt
 ed where yon
 knight halts
- That wencuft al [at] the first affemble ,
 Whar that 3one kny ch[t]t howis, howit hee "
 " 3ha," quod the qwen, " rycht well remembir I ,
 Qwhat is the cauß at 3he in quere, & quhy ?" 2844 ' Why do you in
 quire? she re
 plies
- " Madem, of [al] this larg warld is he
 The kny ch[t]t the wich I moft desir to fee
 His ftrenth, his manhed, his curag, and his my ch[t]t,
 Or do in armys that longith to o kny ch[t]t " 2848 ' He is the
 knight madam
 whom I most de
 sire to see
- [B]y thus, arthur, with confell well awyfit,
 Harth ordant his batellis, and devyfit Arthur arranges
 his lines of battle

King Ydrus leads the first	The first of them led ydrus king, & he O worthy man vas nemmyt for to bee	2852
Harwy the Re weyll an aged knight the second	The secund led harwy the Reweyll, That in this world was knyght that had moft feill For to prowid that longith to the were, One agit knyght, and well couth armys bere	2856
[Fol 35 b] King Angus a cousin of Arthur, leads the thrid	[T]he thrid feld [he] delueit it in the hond Of angus, king of ylys of scotlande, Wich cufing was one to king arthur nere, One hardy knyght he was, withouten were	2860
King Ywons the fourth	The ferd batell led ywons the king, O manly knyght he was In to al thing And thus dewyit ware his batellis fere,	2864
In every com pany are 15,000	In euery feld xv thousand were [T]he fift ¹ batell the lord fu ywan lede,	
The lord sir Ywan leads the rearguard	Whois manhed was in euery cuntre dred, Sone he was one to wryne the kyng, Forwart, stout, hardy, wyß, and þlung , Xx thousand in his oft thai pait, Wich ordanit was for to assemble laft	2868
Galiot's armies	[A]nd galiot, apone the tothir fyde, Rycht wyfly gan his batellis to dewid	2872
Malengyns leads the first line ,	The first of them led malengyns the king, None hardyar In to this erth lewyng , He neuer more out of his cuntre Raid, Nor he with hyme one hundereth knyghtis hade	2876
the first conquest king the second , Walydeyne the thrid ,	[T]he secund the first conquest king led, That for no perell of armys vas adred , The thrid, o king clepit walydeyne, He led, and was o manly knyght, but weyne	2880
Clamedeus the fourth ,	[T]he ferd, king clamedeus has, Wich that lord of far ylys was	
and King Bran dymagus the fifth	The fift ² batell, whar xl thousand were, King brandymagus had to led and there,	2884

¹ MS "first" See 1 2870² MS "first"

- O manly kny~~cht~~, and prewit well oft fyð,
 And in his confell wonder schaip & wyð
 Galhot non amys bur that day,
 Nor as o kny~~cht~~ he wald hyme felf aray, 2888
 But as o *feruand* in o habariowne,
 O prekyne hat, and ek o gret trownfciowñ
 In til his hond, and one o ourfour fet,
 The beft that was in ony lond to get 2892
 Endlong the rewar men my~~cht~~ behold & fee,
 Of kny~~chts~~ weryne mony one affemble,
 And the blak kny~~cht~~ full he couth abyde,
 W~~ith~~out remowyng, one the Riwer fyde, 2896
 Bot to the bartes to behold and fee
 Thai as his hart defyrit moft to bee
 And quhen the lady of melyhalt haith feñ
 The kny~~cht~~ fo ftond, fche faid one to the qweñ, 2900
 "Madem, It is my confell at þhe send
 One to þone kny~~cht~~, þour felf for to commend,
 Befeching hyme that he wald wnder tak
 This day to do of amys, for þour fak " 2904
 The quen anfuert as that hir lykit nochit,
 For othir thing was more In to hir thochit,
 " For well þhe fe the perell how disio[1]nt,
 The adwentur now ftondith one the point 2908
 Both of my lord his honore, and his lond,
 And of his men, m¹ danger how thai ftond
 Bot þhe, and ek thur vthere ladice may,
 If that yhow lykith, to the kny~~cht~~ gai fay 2912
 The mefag, is none that wil yhow let,
 For I tharof fal nochit me entermet "
 On to the quen fcho faith, " her I,
 If fo it pleð thur vthur ladice by, 2916
 Am for to fend one to the kny~~cht~~ content, "
 And al the ladice can thar to affent,

Galhot bore no
arms

but was arrayed
as a servant in a
habergeon with
a prekyne hat
and a trunchoon
in his hand

The black knight
still remains
looking towards
the parapet

The lady says to
the queen—
[Fol. 36 a]

Madam pray
commend your
self to yon
knight

The queen reples

that the lady and
the rest may send
a message but
that she will not
herself take part
in it

¹ Stevenson reads "the", but "the" is crossed out, and
 "m" written over it

	Befeching hir the meſag to dewyſ,	
	As ſche that was moſt prudent & moſt wyſ	2920
The lady ſends a diſcreet maiden	Sche grantit, and o madeñ haith thai tone,	
	Diſcret, apone this meſag for till gone ,	
and Sir Gawine a ſquire with two ſpeurs	And ſu gawan a ſqwyar bad alfo,	
	With two ſperis one to the knyght to go	2924
	The lady than, withouten more dulay,	
	Haith chargit hir apone this wyſ to ſay	
to ſay that all the ladies the queen alone excepted commend them to the black knight	“Schaw to the knyght, the ladice euer-alkone	
	Ben In the court, excep the quen allon,	2928
	Til hyme them haith recommandit oft fyr,	
	Befeching hyme of knyghted and gentriſ,	
	(Or if It h pyne euermore that he ſhall	
	Cum, quhar thai may, owther an or all,	2932
	In ony thing awail hyme or fupport,	
	Oi do hyme ony plefans or comfort.)	
and pray him to eſſy ſome deed of arms	He wold wichſaif for loue of them this day	
	In armys ſum manhed to aſſay ,	2936
	And ſay, ſu gawan hyme the ſperis ſent ,	
	Now go, this is the fek of our entent ”	
The damſel and ſquire	The damyfell ſche hath hir palſfray tone,	
	The ſqwyar with the ſperis with hir goñ ,	2940
[Fol 36 b]	The neſt way thai paß one to ye knyght,	
repet the meſſage	Whai ſche repete hir meſag haith ful rycht	
Sir I ancelot finding the queen not in the meſſage	And quhen he hard, and planly wnderſtude,	
	How that the quen not in the meſag Jude,	2944
was not content,	He ſpak no word, bot he was not content ,	
	Bot, of ſir gawan, glaid in his entent,	
	He aſkit quhar he was, and of his fair ?	
	And thai to hyme the maner can duclar ,	2948
but asks the ſquire to hold the two ſpeurs ready for him	Than the ſqwyar he prayth that he wold	
	Paß to the feld, the ſperis for to hold	
	He ſaw the knyghts ſemblyng her and thare,	
	The ſtedis Rynnyng with the ſadillis bare ,	2952
	His ſpurs goith in to the ſtedis syde,	
	That was ful fwyft, and lykit not to byd ,	

- And he that was hardy, ferß, and ftout,
 Furth by o fyd affembling on a rout 2956 He attacks a
 Whar that one hundereth knyghts was, & mo , company of a
 And wtt/ the frst has Recounterit so, hundred knights
 That frome the deth not helpith hym his scheld, slays the nearest
 Both hors and man is lying in the feld , 2960
 The spere is gone, and al in pecis brak,
 And he the trunfeyoune in his hand hath tak
 That two or thre he haith the sadillis reft, and with the
 Whill in his hond schortly no thing is left 2964 stump of his
 Syne, to the fquyar, of the feld is goñ, spear be:aves
 Fio hyme o spere In to his hond haith ton, two or thre of
 And to the feld returnyt he azayne their saddles
 The frst he met, he goith one the plan, 2968 He takes a new
 And ek the next, and fyne the thrid also , spear from the
 Nor in his hond, nore in his strak was ho squire and oer
 His ennemys that veryng In affray throws thre
 Befor his ftok, and makith rovm alway , 2972 knyghts
 And in sich wyß ay in the feld he vrocht,
 Whill that his speris gon var al to nocht ,
 Whar-of frr gawan berith vitnesing
 Throw al this world that thar vas non levyng, 2976
 In fo schort tyme fo mych of armys wrocht
 His speris gone, out of the feld he focht, His spears gone
 And passit is one to the Rewere syde, he returns to his
 Rycht thore as he was wont for to abyde , 2980 first position
 And fo beholdyne In the famyne plañ, [Fol. 37 a]
 As to the feld hyme lykit nocht azañ
 Sir gawan saw, and saith on to the quen,
 " Madem, yhone knyght disponit [not],¹ I weyñ, 2984 Sir Gawane says
 To help ws more, fore he fo is awyfit , to the queen
 As I presume, he thunkith hyme dispisit ' Madam yon
 Of the mesag that we gart to hyme mak , knight thinks
 Yhowre-felf yhe have fo speccaly out tak, 2988 himself despised
 because you so
 specially excepted
 yourself in the
 message

¹ "not" seems required

- He thinkith ewill contempnit for to bee,
 Confidering how that the necessitee
 Most principally to yhowr supporting lȳs
 Tharfor my confell is, yhow to dewyȝ, 2992
 And ek ȝhowre self in yhowr trespass accusȝ,
 And ask hyme mercy, and yhour gilt excusȝ
 ask him mercy
 therefore and ex-
 cuse your guilt
 For well it oucht o prince or o king
 Til honore and til cheryȝ in al thing 2996
 O worthȳ man, that is in knyȝhted prȳwit
 For throw the body of o man eschevit
 Mony o wonder, mony one aduenture,
 That merwell war til any creature 3000
 And als oft-tyme is both hard & fen,
 Quhar xl thousand haith discumfit ben
 Vith v thousand, and only be o knyȝht,
 For throw his strenth, his vorsechip, & his myȝht, 3004
 His falowsechip sich comfort of hym tris
 That thai ne dreid the danger of thar iȳs
 And thus, madem, I wot, withouten were,
 If yon knyȝht will continue to help 3008
 the king
 If that ȝhone knyȝht this day will pȳfywere
 Witȝ his manhed for helping of the king,
 We sal have causȝ to dred in to no thing
 Our folk of hyme thai sal sich comfort tak,
 And so adied thar ennemys sal mak, 3012
 That fur I am, onys or the nyȝht,
 Of forȝ ȝhone folk sal tak one them the flyȝht
 yon folk shall
 perforce take to
 flight
 Wharfor, madem, that ȝhe have gilt to mend,
 My confell is one to ȝhon knyȝht ȝe fend " 3016
 "Sir," quod sche, "quhat pleffith yhow to do
 ȝhe may dewyȝ, and I consent thar-to "
 Than was the lady of melyhalt content,
 And to su gawan in-to contynent 3020
 Sche clepit the maid, wich that passit ar,
 And he hir bad the mesag thus duclar
 [For 37 b]
 A maiden is
 therefore sent to
 say "
 "Say [to] ¹ the knyȝht, the quen hir recommendith,

¹ "to" seems required

- And fal correk in quhat that fche offendith 3024
 At his awn will, how fo hyme lift dewyð,
 And hyme exortith, in moft humyll wyð,
 As euer he will, whar that fche can or may,
 Or powar haith hir charg, be ony way, 3028
 And for his worfchip and his hie manhede,
 And for hir luf, to helpen in that ned
 The king's honore, his land fore to preferf,
 That he hu thonk for euer may deferf" 3032
 And four fquyaris chargit he alfo
 With thre horf and fperis x to go
 Furth to the knyght, hyme prayng for his fak,
 At his raquest thame in his ned to tak 3036
 [T]he maden furth with the fquyaris is went
 One to the knyght, and fchawith yar entent
 Tho mefag hard, and ek ye prefent feñ,
 He answert, and askith of the qwen, 3040
 "Su," quod fche, ["sche]"¹ in to þhone bartus lvis,
 Whar that this day yhour dedis fal dewyð,
 Yhowr manhed, yhour worfchip, and affere,
 How þhe conteñ, and how yhe armys bere, 3044
 The quen hir-felf, and many o lady to,
 Sal Iugis be, and vitnes how yhe do "
 Than he, whois hart ftant in o new aray,
 Saith, "damyceyll, on to my lady fay, 3048
 How euer that hir lykith that it bee,
 Als far as wit or powar is in me,
 I am hir knyght, I fal at hir command
 Do at I may, withhouten more demand 3052
 And to fer gawan, for his gret gentrið,
 Me recommend and thonk a thoufand fyð"
 With that o fpei he takith in his hond,
 And fo in to his fterapis can he ftond 3056
 That to fer gawan femyth that the knyght

that the queen
humbly exhorts
him

to help in that
need to preſerve
the king's
honour and to
deſerve her
thanks

Sir Gawane alſo
ſends four ſquires
with three horſes
and ten ſpears

The meſſage
heard he inquires
about the queen

and is told that
from yon parapet
ſhe can witneſs
his deeds

He returns a
meſſage that he
is the queen's
knight

He ſtands in his
ſtraps and
ſeems to increaſe
a foot in height

¹ A ſecond "ſche" is here required

Encresfing gon o larg fut one hycht,
 And to the ladice faith he, and the qwen,
 "3hon is the knyght that euer I have sen 3060
 In al my tyme moft knyghtly of affere,
 And in hyme felf gon fareft armys bere "
 [Fol 38 a] [T]he knyght that haith Remembrit in his thocht
 Greatly encouraged, The qwenys chargis, & how fche hym befocht, 3064
 Curag can encresfing to his hart,
 His ourfer lap, and gan onon to ftart,
 And he the fqwaris haith reqwyrit fo,
 That thar with hyme one to the feld wald go 3068
 Than goth he one, withouten mor abaid,
 And our the reuail to the feld he raid,
 Don goth his fpere onone In to the Reft,
 And in he goth, withouten mor areft, 3072
 Thar as he faw moft perell and moft dred
 In al the feld, and moft of help¹ had ned,
 Whar femblyt was the fift-conqueft king
 With mony o knyght that was in his leding 3076
 The fift he met, doune goth both horß & man,
 The fper was holl, and to the next he Raß
 That helpit hyme his hawbrek nor his fcheld,
 Bot throuch and throuch haith perfit in the feld 3080
 Sir Kay Sir Sygramors Sir
 Grefown, Sir Ywan Sir Brandellis and Gaheris
 all six in a race spur across the field with stretched spears
 Sir kay, the wich haith thus encontyr fen,
 His horß he ftrekith our the larg gren,
 And fir fygramors ek the defyrand,
 With fir grefown cummyth at yar honde, 3084
 Son of the duk, and alfua fir ywan
 The baftart, and fir brandellis onan,
 And gaheris, wich that broyr was
 To gawan, thir fex in a Raß 3088
 Deluierly com prekand our the feldis
 With fperis ftraucht, and couerit with thar fcheldis,
 Sum for love, fum honor to purchesß,
 And after them one hundereth knyghtis was, 3092
 and 100 knights after them

¹ MS "held "

- In famyne will, thar manhed to affay
 On his v falowis clepit than *sir* kay,
 And faith them, "*siris*, thar has 3honder ben
 A courß that neuer-more farar was fen 3096 Sir Kay exhorts them
 Maid be o knyght, and we ar cummyn ilkon
 Only ws one [his] worßchip to dispone,
 And neuer we in al our dais mycht
 Have bet axampil than iffith ws 3one knyght 3100
 Of well doing, and her I hecht for me
 Ner hyme al day, if that I may, to bee,
 And folow hyme at al [my] mycht I fall,
 Bot deth or vthir adwentur me fall 3104
 With that thir fex, al in one assent,
 With fresch curag In to the feld Is went
 The blak knyghtis spere in pecis goñe,
 Frome o sqwyar oñe vthir haith he toñe, 3108 [Fol 98 b]
With a second spear the black knight seeks the field closely followed by the six
 And to the feld onone he goth ful ryght,
 Thir fex with hyme ay holdith at yar mycht
 And than bygan his wonderis in the feld,
 Thar was no helme, no hawbryk, nore no scheld, 3112
 Nor yhit no knyght so hardy, ferß, nore stout,
 No 3hit no maner armour mycht hald owt
 His strenth, nore was of powar to withstond,
 So mych of armys dyde he with his honde, 3116
 That every wight ferleut of his deid,
 And al his fois stondith ful of dreid
 So befely he can his tyme dispend,
 That of the speris wich *sir* gawan fend, 3120
 Holl of them all thar was not lewit oñe,
 Throw wich but mercy to the deyth is gon
 Ful many o knyght, and many o wemour,
 That couth fuffen ful hardely o ftour 3124
 And of his horß suppruifit ded ar two,
 One of his awn, of gawanis one also,
 And he one fut was fechtand one the gren,
 When that *sir* kay haith with his falowis fen, 3128 Two horses of his are killed and he fights on foot

The squire brings him a fresh horse,	The squyar with his hors than to hym brocht, Magre his fois he to his courfear focht Deluierly, as of o mychty hart,	
he leaps into the saddle without stirrups	Without fteropis in to his fadull ftart, That euery wycht beholding mervell has Of his ftrenth and deluier befynes	3132
Sir Kay asks who he is,	Sir kay, feing his hors, and how that thai War cled in to fir gawanis aray, Afkith at the squyar if he knewith What that he was, this knyght? & he hym fchewith	3136
but the squire cannot tell	He wift no thing quhat that he was, nore hee Befor that day hyme neuer faw with Ee Than afkith he, how and one quhat wyß On gawanis hors makith hyme fch feruice?	3140
The black knight returns to the field	The fqw[y]ar farth, "forfuth y wot no more, My lord ws bad, I not the cruß quhairfore"	3144
The six comrades follow him	The blak knyght, horsit, to the feld can fcew Als frefch as he was in the morow new,	
[Fol 39 a]	The fex falowis folowit hyme ilkone, And al in front on to the feld ar goß, Rycht frefchly one thar ennemys thai foght, And many o fair poynt of armys vroght	3148
Malengin's host is discomfited by king Ydras and retreats to join the second line commanded by the Conquest-king	[F]han hapnyt to king malanguns oft By ydras king difcumfit was, & loft, And fled, and to the conqueft-king ar goße, Thar both the batellis affemblit In to one, King malengynis in to his hart was wo, For of hyme-felf no better knyght mycht go,	3152
so that 40 000 are now opposed to 15 000 of Arthur's	Thar xl thousand war thai for xv Than mycht the feld rycht perellus be fen Of armyt knyghtis gaping one the ground, Sum deith, and fum with mony a grewous wond, For arthuris knyghtis, that manly war and gud, Suppos that vthir was o multitude, Refaut tham well at the fperis end, But one fuch wyß thai may not lang defend	3156 3160 3164

- The blak knyght saw the danger of the feld,
 And al his doings knowith quho beheld,
 And ek remembrith in to his entent
 Of the mesag that sche haith to hyme sent 3168
 Than curag, strenth encrefing with manhed,
 Ful lyk o knyght one to the feld he raid,
 Thinking to do his ladice love to have,
 Or than his deth befor hir to relave 3172
 Thar he begynyth in his feist curag
 Of armys, as o lyounne in his rag,
 Than merwell was his doing to behold,
 Thar was no knyght so strong, nor yhit so bold, 3176
 That in the feld befor his fuerd he met,
 Nor he so hard his strok apone hyme fet,
 That ded or wondit to the erth he focht,
 For thar was not bot wonderis that he wrocht 3180
 And magre of his fois everilkone,
 In to the feld oft tymys hyme aloñ
 Throuch and throuch he passith to & fro,
 For in the ward¹ it was the maner tho 3184
 That non o knyght shuld be the brydill tak
 Hyme to orest, nore cum behynd his bak,
 Nor mo than on at onys one o knyght
 Shuld strik, for that tyme worship ftud so ryght 3188
 That was the feld ryght perellus and strong
 Till arthuris folk, fet thai contenyt longe,
 Bot in sich wyß this blak knyght can conten,
 That thai, the wich that hath his manhed feñ, 3192
 Sich hardyment haith takyne In his ded,
 Them thocht thai had no maner caus of dred,
 Als long as he myght owthir ryd or go,
 At every ned he them recomfort so 3196
 Sir kay haith with his falowis al the day
 Folowit hyme al that he can or may,

The black knight
 knowing who is
 beholding him,

thinks to have
 his lady's love or
 die before her

He works no
 thing but won
 ders

and often passes
 alone through
 the field

[Fol 392]

He fights in such
 wise as to en
 courage all who
 see his deeds

Sir Kay and his
 fellows follow
 him all day

¹ Another spelling of *world*, i e world, which occurs in the fuller form in l 3212

- And wonder well thai have in armys pr^ewit,
 And with thar manhed oft thar folk relewit , 3200
 Bot well thai faucht in diuers^e placis fere,
 With multitud yar folk confusit were,
 That long in sich wy³ mycht thai nochit contēn
 Sir kay, that hath fir gawans qfquyaris fen, 3204
 He clepit hyme, and haith hyme prayt fo,
 That to fir harwy the rewell wil he go,
 And say to hyme, "ws think hyme ewil awyfit ,
 For her throuch hyme he suffeit be supprnit 3208
 The best knyght that euer armys bur ,
 And if it so befell of adwentur,
 In his defalt, that he be ded or lamyt,
 This warld fal have hyme vtraly defamyt 3212
 And her ar of the round table also
 A faloufchip, that fall in well and wo
 Abid with hyme, and furt^h for to endur
 Of lyf or deth, thus day, thar adwentur , 3216
 And if so fal discumfyt at thai bee,
 The king may say that wonder ewill haith he
 Contentit hyme, and keptit his honore,
 Thus for to tyne of chevalry the flour¹ " 3220
 The squre takes the message
 The fqw[y]ar hard, and furt^h his way Raid,
 In termys fchort he al his mesag said
 Se^e harwy faith, "y wytne³ god, that I
 Neuer in my days comytat tratory, 3224
 And if I now begyne In to myne eld,
 In ewill tyme fyrst com I to this feld ,
 Bot, if god will, I fal me son discharg
 Say to fir kay, I fal not ber the charg, 3228
 He fal no mater have me to rapref,
 I fal amend this mys if that I les³ "
 The fqwyar went and telhit to fir kay ,
 Sir Harwy says that Sir Kay shall have no cause to reprove him
 And fir harwy, in al the haft he may, 3232
 Assemblyt hath his oftis, & onon
 In gret defyre on the feld is gon

- Before his folk, and haldith furth his way,
 Don goith his sper, and ewyne before fir kay 3236
 So hard o knycht he frykith in his ten
 That hors and he lay both apone the gren
 Sir gawan saw the counter that he maad,
 And leuch for al the farues that he had 3240
 That day fir harwy prewyt in the feld
 Of armys more than longth to his eld,
 For he was more than fyfty yher of ag,
 Set he was ferð and 3ong in his cuiag, 3244
 And fro that he affemblyt his bataill
 Doune goith the folk of galotys al haill,
 For to wit/ftond thai war of no poware,
 And yhit of folk x thousand mo thei vare 3248
K yng valydone, that fauch on fuch o wyf
 His falowis dangerit wih thai ennemys,
 Wih al his folk, being fres and new,
 Goith to the feld onon, them to reffkew, 3252
 Thar was the feld rycht perellus azane,
 Of arthuris folk ful many on var ilan
B ot angus, quich that lykith not to bid,
 And saw the perell one the tother sid, 3256
 His fted he ftrok, and wih his oft is gon
 Whar was most ned, and thar the feld has ton
K yng clamedyus makith non abaid,
 Bot wih his oft one to the sid he raid 3260
A nd ywons king, that haith his cummyn fen,
 Encounterit hyme in myddis of the greñ.
 The aucht batellis affemblyt one this wið,
 On ather half the clamore and the cryf 3264
 Was lametable and petws for til her,
 Of knychtis wich in diuers placis fere
 Wondit war, and fallyng to and fro,
 3hit galyotys folk war xx thousand mo 3268
T he blak knycht than on to hyme-self he said
 "Remembir the, how yhow haith ben araid,

and proves him
 self a better war
 rior than might
 have been ex
 pected of one so
 old

Galiot's folk are
 beaten

King Valydone
 comes to support
 them

Angus comes to
 aid Arthur's men

Clamedyus comes
 to aid Galiot's
 men

Ywons encoun
 ters Clamedyus

Great clamour
 and lamentable
 cries on either
 side

The black knight
 bids himself re
 member love's
 power over him,

- Ay fen ye hour that yow was makid knyght,
 With love, azane quhois powar & whois mycht 3272
 Yow haith no strenth, yow may It not endur,
 Noi ȝhit non vthir eithly creatur ,
 And bot two thingis ar the to amend,
 and that only his lady's mercy or his life's end can amend him 3276
 Thi ladice mercy, or thi lyvys end
 And well yhow wot that on to hir prefens,
 [fol 40 b] Til hir estat, nor til hir excellens,
 Thi feblnes neuermore is able
 For to attan, ſche is ſo honorable 3280
 And fen no way yow may ſo hie extend,
 He counſels him ſelf to ſtrive for her thanks,
 My verray confell is, that yow pretend
 This day, (ſen yow becummyne aȝt hir knyght
 Of hir comand, and fechtit in hir fycht), 3284
 And well yow ſchaw, ſen yow may do no mor,
 That of refone ſche ſal the thank tharfore ,
 Of euery poynt of cowardy yow ſcham,
 and to be aſhamed of every poynt of cowardice 3288
 And in til armys purches the ſum nam "
 With that of love in to o new deſin
 Swift as a croſſ bow bolt he ſeeks the field
 His ſpere he ſtraucht, and ſwift as any wyre
 With al his forſ the neſt feld he foght ,
 His ful ſtrenth in armys thar he vroght, 3292
 In to the feld ruſching to and fro,
 Doune goth the man, doune goth the horſ alſo ,
 Sum throw the ſcheld is perſit to the hart,
 Sum throw the hed, he may It not aſtart 3296
 His bludy fuerd he dreuch, that carwit ſo
 His ſword carves the head from ſome and cuts the arms of others in twain
 Fro ſum the hed, and ſum the arm in two ,
 Sum in the feld fellit is in fwoȝn,
 Throw ſum his fuerd goth to the ſadill doune 3300
 His ſois waren abaſit of his dedis,
 His mortell ſtrok ſo gretly for to dred is ,
 Whar thar hyme ſaw, witȝun a lytall ſpace,
 When his foes ſee him they leave the place for dread of death 3304
 For dread of ded, thar levyng hyme the place,
 That many o ſtrok ful oft he haith forlorȝn ,
 The ſpedy horſ away the knyght hath born

- In to his wyrking neuermore he feft,
 Nor non abaid he makith, nor areft 3308
 His falowis, fo in his knyghted affuryd,
 Thai ar recomfort, thar manhed is recoueryt,
 And one thar fois ful ferfly thar foght,
 Thar goth the lyf of many o knyght to nocht 3312
 So was the batell wonderful to tell,
 Of knyghtis to fe the multitud that fell,
 That pety was til ony knyght to feñ
 The knyghtis lying gaping on the gren 3316
 The blak knyght ay continewit fo faft,
 Whill ' many one, difcumfit at the laft,
 Are fled, and planly of the feld thei pas
 And galyot haith wondyr, for he was 3320
 Of mor powar, and askit at them qwhy
 As cowntis thar fled fa fchamfully?
 Than faith o knyght, for wondit in the biayne,
 " Who lykith, he may Retwrn azayne 3324
 Fiome qwhens we come, merwals for to fee,
 That in his tyme neuer fch fauch hee "
 " Marwell," quod he, " that dar I boldly fay
 Thay may be callit, and quhat thar ar, I pray? " 3328
 " Schir, in the feld forfuth thar is o knyght,
 That only throw his body and his mycht
 Wencuffith all, that thar may non fuffen
 His firokis, thar ar fo fureows and ken 3332
 He farth as o lyone or o beyre,
 Wod in his rag, for fch is his affere
 Nor he the knyght in to the armys Red,
 Wich at the first asfemble in this fted 3336
 Wencuffith all, and had the holl renown,
 He may to this be no comparyfoune,
 Fore neuer he feftith fen the day vas goñ,
 Bot euermore continewit in to one " 3340

His knightly
deeds assure his
fellows

It was pitiful to
see the knight's
gaping upon the
green

[Fol 41 a]

Galiot asks his
men why they
flee

A knight replies
that whoever
likes may go and
see marvels

Galiot asks, what
marvels and the
knight tells him
there is a knight
who vanquishes
all

who fares as a
lion or a bear

to whom the red
knight bears no
comparison

Galot say s i e
will go and see

Quod galot, "in nome of god and we
Al, be tymc, the futhfastnes³ fal see "

Galot is armed
rallies the flyers
and encourages
his men

[T]han he in armys that he had is gon,
And to the feld with hyme azane hath ton 3344

Al the flearis, and foundyne [in]¹ sich aray
His folk, that ner discumfyt al war thay ,
Bot quhen thai saw cummyne our the plan
Thar lord, thai tuk sich hardement azañ, 3348

They shout their
war cries

That thar effenzers lowd thai gon to cry
He chargit tham to go, that ware hyme by,
Stiaucht to the feld, with al thar holl forð ,
And thai, the wich that sparit not the horð, 3352

All redy wai to fillyng his command,
And freschly went, withowten more demand
Throw quwich thar folk recoueryt haith thai place,
For al the feld preswmyt that thar was 3356

All think a new
host is coming

O new oft, one such o wyð thai fought ,
Whar arthuris folk had passith al to nocht,

Arthur s folk de
termine rather to
die than fly

Ne war that thai the better war ilkoñe,
And at thai can them vtiaily dispoñe 3360

[Fol 41 b]

Rathar to dee than flee, in thar entent,
And of the blak knyght haith sich hardyment ,
For at al perell, al harmys, and myschef,
In tyme of ned he can tham al ralef 3364

[T]har was the batell dangerous & ftrong,
Gret was the pres, bat^h perellus & throng ,
The blak knyght is born on to the ground,
His horð hyme falyth, that fellith dethis wound 3368

The black knight
is borne to the
ground

The six comrades
go to the earth

The vi falowis, that falowit hyme al day,
Sich was the pres, that to the erth go thay ,
And thar in myd among his ennemys
He was about enclofit one sich wyð 3372

None know
where he is

That quhare he was non of [his] falowis knew,
Nor mycht nocht cum to help hyme, nore reikew

¹ The sense, but not the metre, requires "in "

And thus among his ennemys allon

His nakid fuerd out of his hond haith ton,
And thar he p^{re}wit his weitew & his firenth,

3376 He defends him
self with his
sword

Fo1 thar was none w^{ith}in the fueidis lenth
That came, bot he goith to confusioun

Thar was no helme, thar was no habiroun,
That may refist his fuerd, he smytith so,

3380 No helm nor ha
bergeon may re
sist his sword

One euery fyd he helpith to and fro,

That al about the compas thar mycht ken,

The ded hors lyth v^{ir}flyng w^{ith} the men

3384

Thar hyme affalzeing bot^h w^{ith} scheld & spere,

And he azane, as at the ftok the bere

Snybbith the hardy hound^{es} that ar ken,

He fares like a
bear at the stake
that snubs the
hardy hounds

So farth he, for neuer mycht be fen

3388

His fuerd to rest, that in the gret rout

He rowmyth all the compas hyme about

[A]nd galot, beholding his manhed,

W^{ith}in his self wonderith of his ded,

3392 Galot wonders at
his deeds,

How that the body only of o knyght

Haith sich o firenth, haith sich affere & mycht,

Than said he thus, "I wald not that throw me,

Or for my cauß, that such o knyght fuld dee,

3396 and says that
such a knight
shall not die on
his account

To conquer all this world that is so larg "

His hors than can he w^{ith} his spuris charg,

A gret trunfioun In to his hond hath ton,

And in the thikeft of the p^{re}ß is goñ,

3400

And al his folk chargit he to fess

He charges all his
folk to cease

At his command thar levyng al the p^{re}ß,

And quhen he had departit all the rout,

He said, "fir knyght, havith now no dout "

3404

Wich answert, "I have no cauß to dred "

"3is," quod he, "fa euer god me sped,

Bot apone fut quhill 3e ar fechtand here,

and assures the
black knight that
He will himself
warrant him from
all harm

And yhow defendith apone sich manere,

3408

So hardely, and ek so lyk o knyght,

I fal my self w^{ith} al my holl mycht

	Be yhour defens, and varand fra al harmys , Bot had yhe left of worchup In til armys, 3412 What I have don I wold apone no wyß , Bot fen yhe ar of knyçthed fo to prys, 3he fal ¹ no maner cauß have for to dred
He offers him as many horses as he needs and proposes that they shall never again part	And fet yhour horß be falit at this ned, 3416 Displeß yhow not, for quhy 3e fal not want Als many as yhow lykith for to hawnt , And I my-felf, I fal yhowr sqwyar bee, And, if god will, neuer more fal wee 3420
He lights from his horse and gives him to Lancelot who thanks him	Depart ,” witi that, anon he can to lycht Doune frome his horß, and gaf hyme to y ^e knyçht The lord he thonkit, and the horß hath ton, And als fo fresch one to the feld is gon, 3424 As at no ftrokis he that day had ben His falowis glad, one horß that hath hym fen, To galhot one vthir horß thai broght , And he goith one, and frome the feld he focht, 3428
Galhot returns to his host, and chooses a band of 10 000 men	And to the plan quhar that his oftis were , And brandymagus chargit he to stere Efter hyme, witiun a lytill space, And x thousand he takyne witi hym haß 3432 Towart the feld onon he can to Rid, And chargit them befor ye oft to byd
The trumpets clamours, horns, and bugles are sounded.	Wp goith the trumpets, and the claryownis, Hornys, bugillis blawing furti thar fownis, 3436 That al the cuntre refownit hath about ,
Arthur's folk despair	Than arthurns folk var in dispar & dout, That hard the noys, and saw the multitud Of fresch folk , thai cam as thai war wod 3440
The sable knight, still fearless,	[B]ot he that was witiowten any dred, In fabill cled, and saw the gret ned, Affemblyt al his falowis, and arayd , And thus to them in manly termes said 3444
harangues his men, saying,	

¹ MS “falt”

- "What that ȝe ar I know not yhour estat,
 Bot of manhed and worchip, well I wat,
 Out throuch this wald yhe aw to be *commendit*,
 This day ȝe have fo knyghtly yhow defendit 3448
 And now yhe fee how that, azanis the *nycht*,
 Yhour ennemys pretendit *with* thar myght
 Of multitud, and *with* thar new oft,
 And *with* thar buglis and thar wyndes boft 3452
 Friefchly cummyng In to fisch aray,
 To ifyne yhow one owtrag¹ or affray
 And now almoft cummyne Is the *nycht*,
 Quhai for yhour ftrenth, yhour curag, & yhovr *mycht*
 Yhe occupye in to fo manly wyf,
 That the worchip of knyghted & empyf
 That yhe have wonyng, and ye gret renown
 Be not yloft, be not ylad doune 3460
 For one hour the fufferyng of diftreß,
 Gret harm It war yhe tyne the hie enciesß
 Of vorchip, ferut al this day before
 And to yhow al my confell is, tharfore, 3464
 With manly curag, but radour, yhe pretend
 To met tham fcharply at the fperis end,
 So that thei feil the cold fperis poynt
 Out-throw thar fcheldis, in thar hartis poynt 3468
 So fal thai fynd we ar no-thing affrayt,
 Whar throuch we fall the well leß be affayt
 If that we met them fcharply in the berd,
 The formeft fal mak al the laif afferd." 3472
 And *with* o woyf thai cry al, "*fir* knyght,
 Apone yhour manhed, and yhour gret *mycht*,
 We fal abyd, for no man fhall efchef
 Frome yhow this day, his manhed for to pref" 3476
 And to his oft the lord *fir* yvane laid,
 "Yhe comfort yow, yhe be no-thing affrayd,

[Hol 42 b]

"I know not who
ye are but I know
that ye ought to
be commended.

Ye see how your
enemies as night
approaches are
striving to give
you an outrage
or a fright.

Employ then
your courage so
that the honour
ye have won be
not again lost

Resolve then to
meet them
sharply without
fear so that they
may feel the cold
spear in their
hearts

Perhaps then the
foremost will
make the rest
afraid

They promise to
stand firm

Sir Yvan also
bids his men be
comforted, for
that they see all

¹ MS "owtray" See Glossary

	Ws ned no more to dreding of suppris ,	
the strength of their enemies	We fe the ftrenth of al our ennemys "	3480
	Thus he laid, for he wend thai var no mo,	
Sir Gawane, how ever knew better	Bot fir gawan knew well It vas not fo ,	
	For al the oftis mycht he fe al day,	
	And the gret hof he faw quhar yat it lay	3484
	[A]nd gahot he can his folk exort,	
Gallot also ex horts his men	Befeching them to be of good comfort,	
	And fich enconte	

[*The rest is wanting*]

NOTES.

[It may be observed, once for all, that the expression *in to* repeatedly occurs where we should simply use *in*, and *one to is* in like manner put for *unto*. The ending *-ith* (for *-ed*) is frequent in the past tense, and *-it* (also for *ed*) in the past participle, though this distinction is not always observed. A still more noticeable ending is *ing* (for *-en*) in the infinitive. Observe further that the letters *v*, *u*, and *w* are perfectly convertible, and used quite indiscriminately, so that *wpone* means *upon*, *vtur* means *utur*, i e, *other our* is put for *over*, *wounde* signifies *wound*, etc.]

Page 1, line 1 *The soft morow*. This nominative case has no verb. A similar construction occurs in the first lines of Books II and III 4 *Upriseth—his hot course*, Upriseth in his hot course, *chare*, chariot 6 *sent*, sendeth, so also *stant*, standeth, l 326 8 *valkyne*, waken 10 *gyrse*, grass 11 *assay*, assault 13 *wor*, voice 17 *frome I can*, from the time that I did 18 *It deunt me*, it availed me. Jameson gives "*Dow*, l to be able, A S *dugan* (*valere*), to be able 2 to avail, Teut *doogen*."

P 2, l 23 *hewy ȝerys*, heavy years 24 "Until that Phœbus had thrice gone through his full circuits" (lit spheres). See the peculiar use of "*pas*" in other places 26 "So, by such a manner, was my lot fated," see l 41 28 *carving can*, did cut 30 *be the morow*, by the morn 36 *newlyngis*, newly, anew 43 *walketh*, walked 50 *I clede*, y-clad, clad Ch has *clede* 54 "No one within thought he could be seen by any wight outside."

P 3, l 56 *clos it*, enclose it, the MS has *clost* 57 *alpest*. This reading of the MS is an error for *alcest*. See Chaucer, Prologue to Legend of good women, l 511

"The grete goodnesse of the queene Alceste,
That turned was into a dayesye,"

Alceste being the contracted form of Alcestis 59 *Wnclosing gane*, did uncloset 60 "The bright sun had illumined the spray, and

had updrawn (upwarped) into the lusty air the night's soft (sober) and moist showers, and had made the morning soft, pleasant, and fair" With this difficult passage we should compare l 2477 66 *Quhill*, until 67 *till ony wicht*, to any wight 69 *Bot gladness til the thoctful, euer mo*, etc, "But, as for gladness to the melancholy man, evermore the more he seeth of it, the more wo he hath" 73 *represent*, represented (accented on the second syllable) 74 *Al day gan be sor*, etc, "All the day, my spirit began to dwell in torment, through sorrow of thought," *be sor*, by sorrow (A S *sorh*) 77 *Ore slep, or how I wot*, "Or sleep, ere I knew how" 83 *A licht*, alighted 84 *levis in to were*, livest in doubt

P 4, l 91 *be morow*, by morrow, at early morn 99 *set*, although 103 *weil accordinge*, very fitting 105 *long ore he be sonde*, (It is) long ere he be sound 108 *seith, for to consel*, saith, that as for concealing or shewing, etc 109 *althur-best*, lit best of all, see Chaucer's use of *alderfirst*, *alderlast*

P 5, l 127 *lat be thi nyss dyspare*, let be thy nice (foolish) despair 128 *erth*, earth 134 *schall hym hateing*, shall hate him The termination *-ing* is here the sign of the infinitive mood after the verb *shall* 140 *Set*, although 146 *tak one hand and mak*, undertake and compose, *trety*, treatise, *vnouth*, unknown, new 151 *belevis*, believe will please thy lady 160 *gis*, thus

P 6, l 161 *troucht*, truth 163 *discharge*, release 170 *spir*, sphere 171 "At command of a wise (god from) whose vision," etc We sometimes find in old English the adjective "a wise" used absolutely for "a wise man" See "Le Morte Arthur," ed F J Furnivall, l 3318 175 *tynt*, lost 177 *be this worldis fame* Here again, as in many other passages, "be" expresses with relation to, as regards 185 *yaim*, them 191 *demande*, demur

P 7, l 198 *Quhill*, until 200 *conten*, treat, lit contain 202 Lancelot is here called the son of Ban, king of Albanak, so again in l 1447 204 *reds*, read 214 "I will not waste my efforts thereupon" 219 *unwyst*, unwist, unknown 225 *nome*, name 226 *Iwondet to the stak*, very deeply wounded, but there is no doubt about the origin of the phrase See Glossary 228 *astart*, get rid of it, escape it

P 8, l 240 *dedenyt to aras*, deigned to pluck out 244 *hurtane*, hurter 245 *Iwond*, wounded 248 *ful wicht*, full nimble 251 *of quhome*, by whom 253 *send*, sent 257 *pasing vassolag*, surpassing prowess 260 "Passed down into the fell caves" 264 *tane*, taken 266 *cure*, care

P 9, l 267 *gant be maid*, caused to be made 271 *auoue*, vow 275 *in to that gret Revere*, in that great river 284 *o gret confusone of pupil and knyghtis, al enarmyt*, a great medley of people and knights, all fully armed Stevenson actually reads *unarmyt*! 294 *I wil report*, both here and in l 320 we should almost expect to find "*I wil report*," i e I will not tell It must mean, "I will

tell you why I omit to mention these things" Compare lines 266, 320 297 *thing*, think

P 10, l 305 *veris*, wars 306 *be the wars*, by the ways 307 *Tueax*, betwixt, *acorde*, agreement 314 *mot*, must 316 *stek*, concluded 319 *most conpulour*, very great composer 320 "As to whose name I will only say, that it is unfit," etc 326 *stant*, standeth 328 *younng*, rung 330 *beith*, shall be, observe the future sense of *beith* in this place 331 *suet*, sweet 332 "His soul in bliss preserved be on that account" 334 *and this endit* Whether *endit* here refers to *inditing* or *ending* is perhaps doubtful

NOTES TO BOOK I

P 11, l 336 If by *aryet* is here meant the *sign*, not the constellation of Aries, the day referred to is April 1 or 2, according to Chaucer's "Astrolabie" 338 *bewis*, boughs 340 *makyne gone*, did make 341 *in thei chere*, after their fashion (For *chere*, see Glossary) 345 *auerding to*, belonging to 351 *Anout*, annoyed 352 *For why*, therefore, so also *for-ith*, therefore 354 *can*, began 355 *sende*, sent 358 *heryng*, hear (infin mood) In the next line it occurs as a present participle 362 *to pas hym*, to go, depart 364 *meit*, to dream of, *aperans*, an appearance, apparition

P 12, l 365 *hore*, hair 375 *vombe*, womb, hence bowels 377 *stert*, started 384 *gert*, caused 390 *trast*, trust 397 *demande*, demur, delay 398 *at*, that

P 13, l 407 *whill*, until 408 *the*, they 410 *to vting*, to know 412 *shauyth al hall*, sheweth all whole 414 *chesyth*, chooseth 422 *shire*, sir 424 *fore to awysing*, in order to take counsel 432 All this about *astronomy* (i e astrology) should be compared with Gower, Conf Amantis, lib vii, ed Pauli, vol 3, pp 133, 134 Arachell, Nembrote, Moises, Hermes are there mentioned as astrologers 433 The MS has "set" (not with a long s) Mr Stevenson has "fet," which would seem right

P 14, l 435 *nembrot*, Nimrod, see *Genesis and Exodus* (E E T S), l 659 436 *herynes*, miswritten for *herymes*, i e Hermes 439 "The which they found were wondrously evil set" 440 *his sweuen met*, dreamed his dream 443 *waryng in to were*, were in doubt 444 *danger*, power to punish, compare Shakspeare's use of the word 457 *but delay*, without delay 459 *stondith hevy cherith*, stood heavy-cheered, was sad in his demeanour 465 *fundyng*, found 466 *depend to*, depend

P 15, l 475 *tone*, taken 478 tell out, speak 487 *preserwith It allan*, is preserved alone 499 *affy in-tyll*, rely upon 500 *farlye*, fail 504 *there clergy*, their science

P 16, l 519 "Through the watery lion, who is also faithful,

and through the leech and eke the water also, and through the counsel of the flower" It is very possible this passage is partly corrupt, l. 520 should certainly be (as may be seen from lines 2010, 2056),

"And through the leich withouten medysyne"

The meanings of lion, leech, and flower are fully explained, however, in lines 2013-2120 524 *weyne*, vain 527 *passid nat his thoght*, left not his thoughts 531 *rachis*, braches, dogs 533 *grewhundis*, grayhounds 536 This purely conjectural line is merely inserted to carry on the sense It is imitated from line 3293 In the next line we should read "grewhundis," rather than "grewhund" 538 *Before ther hedis*, before their heads

P 17, l 545 "All armed, as was then the fashion" 546 *salust*, saluted 548 *lend*, known 549 *levyeth*, liveth 552 The rime requires "land," as in l 638 553 *yald hymne ow*, yield him over 554 *if tribut*, give tribute 566 *recist*, resist, *mone bee*, must be 568 *be*, by 569 *day moneth day*, eie this day month, comp l 1162

P 18, l 577 *faured*, fair-hood, beauty 587 *magre myne entent*, in spite of my intention 591 *nome*, took 593 *Inquere at*, inquire of 596 *wes*, was 599 *vase*, rose 605 *accordith*, agree thereto 606 *recordith*, belongith 607 *visaie*, wiser

P 19, l 621 *This spek I lest*, this I list to speak 622 *varnit*, warned 626 "Though the season of the year was contrary" 627 *atte*, at the 629 *the ilk*, that (Scotch *thilk*) 632 *Melyhalt*, the name both of a hill, and of the town built upon it 636 *affray*, terror 642 *unconquest*, unconquered 643 *cwe*, care

P 20, l 649 *nemmyt*, named 652 *were*, war 654 *or than to morn*, earlier than to morrow 660 *our few*, over few 677 *northest*, north-east

P 21, l 686 *fechteris*, fighters 688 *holde*, held 691 *presone*, prison 697 *peite*, pity 699 The metre of Lancelot's lament is that of Chaucer's "Cuckoo and Nightingale," and was very possibly copied from it *Quhat have y gilt*, what crime have I committed 702 *ago*, gone 703 *nat*, naught, *me gland*, gladden me 706 *til have*, to have 709 *Sen thelke tyme*, since that time

P 22, l 718 *of remed*, for a remedy 719 *sesith*, ceaseth 723 *with this lady*, by this lady 728 *lansere*, leisure 731 *druerss* *wars seie*, divers several ways 733 *bur*, bore 735 *cher*, car 740 *dout*, to fear 745 *but were*, without doubt This expression often occurs

P 23, l 751 *few meny*, small company, an oddly sounding expression to modern ears 753 *cold*, called 754 *hot*, hight, was named 755 *but in his cumpany*, unless he had with him 757 *He saith*, the speaker is the captain of the hundred knights, called in l 806 *Malegynis* 768 *als fell*, just as many 777 *hard*, heard 781 *clepit*, called

P 24, l 793, *as he wel couth*, as he well knew how 796 *sen*, seen 800 *sen*, since 806 *was hot*, was hight, was named 809 *In myde the borde and festnat in the stell*, In the midst they encounter, and fastened in the steel See l 850 812 *Rout*, company 815 *ferde*, fourth 817 *sauch thar latter batell steir*, saw their last division stir

P 25, l 820 *gane his mortall fell* A word seems here omitted, if after *mortall* we insert *strokis*, the sense will be, "His enemies began his mortall strokes to feel" 825 *worth*, worthy It would improve the metre to read *worthy* (l 875) 828 *In to were*, in war, in the strife 829 *hyme bure*, bore himself 839 *to for*, heretofore 841 *Atour*, i e *at over*, across 842 *assall*, assault The rime shews we should read *asall*, as in l 855 849 *socht atour*, made their way across The use of *seke* in Early English is curious

P 26, l 861 *setith his payn vpone*, devotes his endeavours to 868 *al to kervouth*, wholly cutteth in pieces 880 *duk*, dark 883 *tan and slan*, taken and slain

P 27, l 895 It frequently occurs in the MS that a space is left at the beginning of a line, and the first letter of the line is omitted It is evident that the intention was that the first letter should be illuminated, and that this, after all, was not done Here, for instance, the T is omitted, as indicated by the square brackets So also in l 1083, etc 897 *pasng home*, go home 899 *was vent*, had gone 905 *dulay*, delay So also *duclar* for *declare* 907 *comyne*, came 908 *ill paid*, displeased 909 *homly*, humbly Stevenson reads *hourly*, but this is wrong, see l 914 911 *carful*, full of care, unhappy 912 *withouten were*, without doubt 914 *lawly*, lowly 918 *wight*, with (unusual, and perhaps wrong)

P 28, l 924 *lefe*, live 929 *eft*, after 933 *thar longith*, there belongeth 943 *I was for til excuss*, I had some excuse 944 "Because I did behove (to do it), out of very need" 946 *lefe it but*, leave it without 953 *ma*, make 954 *ga*, go 955 *of new*, anew 958 *But if that deth or other lat certan*, "Except it be owing to death or other sure hindrance"

P 29, l 960 *be hold*, be held MS *behold* Stevenson suggested the alteration, which is certainly correct 961 *withthy*, on the condition that 965 *promyt*, promise, *als fast as*, as soon as 973 *ferd*, fourth 982 "Where we shall decide the end of this war"

P 30, l 997 *cag*, cage, prison 999 *amen*, pleasant 1000 *vodus*, woods 1004 *lust*, pleasure (Ch) But the line is obscure, unless we read "*duersutee*" 1009 "His spirit started (owing to the) love (which) anon hath caught him," etc 1012 *at*, that 1014 "(As to) whom they know not at all" 1019 *sen at*, since that 1022 *the dewod*, devoid thee 1024 *and*, if 1026 *be ony mayne*, by any mean

P 31, l 1027 *y red*, I advise 1035 *To warnnyng*, to warn

1040 *our the furdys*, over the fords 1044 *oyer* So in MS, the *y* representing the old *th* (*p*), other 1046 *hufyng*, halting 1050 *worschap*, honour "It were more expedient to maintain your honour" 1058 *wonk*, winked 1062 *vare*, aware

P 32, 1 1064 The meaning of "ferst-conquest" is "first-conquered" (*conquest* being Old Fr for conquered) It is explained in l 1547 as having been a title given to the king whom Galot first subdued 1067 *ferss*, fierce 1070 *suppos*, although 1073 *he*, viz the shrew 1077 The MS has "fched." 1080 *ymen*, I mean 1095 *tars*, takes

P 33, 1 1109 *Galyo.*, put for *Galnotes*, the genitive case ending being often omitted, after a proper name especially 1110 *prevnt*, proved, tried 1129 *traist*, trust 1131 *that every thing hath cure*, that (of) everything hath care

P 34, 1 1135 "Aye from the time that the sun began to light the world's face, until he was gone" 1137 *o foris*, perforce 1141 *tans*, takes 1142 *hecht*, promised 1151 *failzeis*, fail 1154 *fet*, fetched 1156 *stant*, standeth 1162 *respūt*, respite 1166 *very knyghtis passing*, weary knights go

P 35, 1 1170 *till speie*, to inquire 1177 *ne wor his worschap*, had it not been for his valour 1187 *quheyar*, whether 1191—4 "And fond," etc These four lines are now for the first time printed They were omitted by Stevenson, evidently by accident 1196 *Per dee* Fr *par Dieu* an oath common in old ballads, generally in the form *pardy* 1197 *vsyt*, used 1198 "I advise that we go unto his arms" (armour) 1203 *harll*, whole

P 36, 1 1207 *abwsyt*, abused, i.e. made an ill use of 1208 *vsyt*, used 1209 *suppos the best that lewis*, even though (it were) the best that lives 1217 *on slep*, asleep The prefix *a-* in English is due to the Saxon *on* 1221 *al to-hurt*, etc See note in Glossary on the word *To-kerweth* 1225 *sauch*, saw, *rewit*, rued, pitied 1233 *one syd a lyt*, a little on one side 1236 *ous mekul*, over much

P 37, 1 1240 *yarof*, thereof 1241 *ruput*, repute, think 1242 *ablare*, abler, readier 1253 Insert a comma after *thret*, and destroy that after *love* The meaning perhaps is, "But what if he be appealed to and threatened, and (meanwhile) his heart be elsewhere set to love" Observe that *and* is often the third or fourth word in the sentence it should begin See l 2833 1258 *zhe tyme your lov*, you lose your love 1260 *conclusit*, ended 1265 *mokul*, much 1268 *of new*, anew, again 1273 *pan*, pain

NOTES TO BOOK II

P 38, 1 1279 *thocht*, anxiety 1284 *apperans*, i.e. vision, as in l 364 1295 *aqwynt*, acquainted, Burns uses *acquēnt* 1297 *com*, coming

P 39, l 1316 "So far out of the way you go in your course"
Compare l 1797 1317 "Thy ship, that goeth upon the stormy
surge, nigh of thy revels (i e because of thy revels) in the gulf it
falls, where it is almost drowned in the peil" 1321 "In the
wretched dance of wickedness" See the curious uses of the word
"daunce" in Chaucer 1323 *the son*, thee soon 1330 *powert*,
poverty, as *the-selwyne wat*, as thyself knows 1334 *in to spousag*,
in wedlock

P 40, l 1343 The word *drueiss* is required to complete the line,
cf l 731 1352 *suppriss*, oppression 1354 *wedwis*, widows
1367 *that ilke*, that same 1369 *sufferith*, makest to suffer

P 41, l 1379 Eccles iv 9, 10 1387 *yow mone*, thou must
1392 *her efter leif*, hereafter live 1401 A comma is scarcely needed
after "*saprens*" It means "The fear of the Lord is the beginning
of wisdom" Prov ix 10

P 42, l 1409 *to ryng under his pess*, to reign under His peace,
by His permission Roquesfort gives *pais*, licence, permission 1420
aiour, error 1427 *leful*, lawful

P 43, l 1447 Ban, king of Albanak, was Lancelot's father
See l 202, 1450 1474 The MS has "affit"

P 44, l 1491 *tak the bak apone themselves*, turn their backs
1500 *yewyne*, given 1504 *till*, to, redundant 1506 *stand aw*,
stand in awe So also in l 2684 The same expression occurs in
The Bruce, iii 62, ed Pinkerton, p 42, ed Jamieson, and also in
Havelok, l 277, where the word *in*, supplied from conjecture, should
be struck out

P 45, l 1537 *throw his peple*, by his people 1541 *Thus falith*
not, etc, "Except wise conduct falleth to a king" 1546 It may
be right to retain the spelling of the MS—"kinghe," for, though
strange and unusual, it occurs again in l 2527

P 46, l 1556 *wende*, weened 1560 *in to his contrare*, against
him. 1568 *trewns*, truce 1575 *his powar*, his chief army 1576
by the yhere, by the ear, privately 1579 *cold*, called, as in l 753

P 47, l 1597 *home fair*, go home 1608 *And*, redundant in
modern English For many of the precepts given by Amytans the
author must have been indebted to Gower, or, at any rate, to the
author of the *Secreta Secretorum* See Gower, Conf Amantis, ed
Pauli, lib vii, vol 3, pp 152—159 And cf Tyrwhitt's note to
the Canterbury Tales, l 16915, and Warton's Hist Eng Poetry

P 48, l 1628 *lest*, least, low, law It requires care to dis-
tinguish the two meanings of *low*, viz *love* and *law* 1633 *Iug*,
judge

P 49, l 1660 *sar*, sorely 1666 A line omitted The inserted
line is purely conjectural

P 50, l 1704 *pupelle*, people 1708 *Imyus*, envious 1716
longith, belongeth 1717 *the lykith*, it likes thee, thou art pleased

P 51, l 1724 *betak til hyme*, confer upon him 1730 *essy*,

- easy 1736 *for the nouns*, for the occasion See White's Ormulum
 1739 *vn to the north pui yow if*, unto the worthy poor thou give
 1742 *set nocht of gret substans*, though not of great value 1754
alowit, approved of
 P 52, l 1761 *tymath*, loseth 1763 *atonis*, at once 1771 *re
 sawe*, receive 1773 *with tuo*, also
 P 53, l 1791 *well less*, *al-out*, much less, altogether The
 punctuation hereabouts in Stevenson's edition is very wild 1795
wys, vice, *the wrechitnes*, thy miserliness 1797 *pass the cours*,
 go thy way 1808 *wrech*, wretch, but here used instead of *miser*
 1812 *viss*, vice 1814 *ben y-knowith*, are known (to be) (?) 1815
dant, daunt 1822 *the ton*, the one
 P 54, l 1832 *bais iar*, beware 1834 *colde*, cool. 1852 *onys*,
 once 1855 *wha throw*, through which, whereby
 P 55, l 1864, *awn*, own The metre requires the more usual
 form *awn* 1879 *dispolzeith*, despoileth 1881 *For quhi*, where
 fore In this line the MS has "scrikth"
 P 56, l 1899 *most nedis*, must needs *Ye = the*, i e The
 one, He 1909 *Mot*, might 1917 *in* should be *into*, as elsewhere
 P 57, l 1940 *havith*, hath 1950 *hot*, hight, is called
 P 58, l 1966 *wnepwist*, unpunished 1990 *omend*, amend,
spill, destroy
 P 59, l 2011 *ayne*, are 2012 *duclar*, declare, so also *dulay*
 for delay 2017 *the god werray*, the Very God
 P 60, l 2036 *For quhi*, wherefore 2040 *mad*, made 2041
clergy, science 2062 *be the mycht dewyne*, by the might divine
 P 61, l 2069 *far*, fare 2079 *helyth frome the ground*, heals
 from the bottom, i e effectually 2100 *not cessith*, who ceaseth not
 P 62, l 2107 *Ne was*, were it not for, *hanfly*, hearty, it
 occurs again four lines below 2135 *yneuch*, enough He means
 he will ask but one question more
 P 63, l 2148 *To passing home*, to go home 2162 *the xxiiij
 day* The first *i* in the MS is like a "v" smudged over, we should
 read "xxiiij," as in l 2155 The contraction is to be read *four and
 twentieth*, not *twenty fourth*, so also in l 610
 P 64, l 2190 *hal dure*, hall door 2192 *o vorne most for to
 comend*, a journey most to be commended 2194 *lowith*, love
 P 65, l 2212 *the fewar eschef thay*, the less they achieve
 2229 "For no adventure will prove so great, that ye shall not
 achieve it" 2241 *whill*, until
 P 66, l 2247 *galot*, so in MS 2265 *grant mercy*, great
 thanks, Fr *grand merci* 2267 *quhy*, because
 P 67, l 2279 *thuthingis*, tidings, probably an error of the
 scribe for *tuthingis* Stevenson has *chachingis*! 2284 *al out*, alto-
 gether 2304 *oft syss*, oft-times See Glossary (*Syss*) 2306 *dante*,
 dauntly 2310 *tithandis*, tidings, compare l 2279
 P 68, l 2323 *aw*, owe 2328 *fantassy*, fancy, notion 2334

for no why, for no reason 2337 *mon I faur*, must I go 2338 *our son It waure*, over soon it were 2342 *For-guhy*, because

P 69, l 2352 *nor* has the force of *but* 2366 *be ony men*, by any means 2368 *on of tho*, one of them 2375 *chen of low*, chain of love 2376 *and if zhe may deren*, and if you may declare

P 70, l 2409 *hartly raquer*, heartily require 2416 *gas ordan*, cause to be provided

P 71, l 2428 *prewaly disspone*, privily dispose 2436 *ellis-guhat*, I suppose this means, "he was on fire elsewhere" 2448 *hamlynes*, homeliness 2452 *fest throw al the zher eliche*, feast through all the year alike

P 72, l 2469 *commend*, commended 2470 *he drywith*, he driveth, pursueth The reading is not *dr awith*, as in Stevenson

NOTES TO BOOK III

P 73, l 2471 This line is too long, and the sense imperfect, but there is no doubt about the reading of the MS 2474 *Awodith*, expels 2475 *doune valis*, falls down, for it is evident that *valis* is an error for *fulis*, the mistake having arisen from confusion with the succeeding line 2480 *clad*, clad 2487 *byggoun*, begun In the next line Stevenson has *sown*, but the true reading is *Rown*, run, as in l 2820 2492 *barnag*, baronage, nobility

P 74, l 2522 *but dulaý*, without delay, *the*, they 2524 *thar com*, their coming 2530 *in the dogre*, in its (due) degree

P 75, l 2545 *Or that*, ere that 2552 *he and hate*, high and hot 2558 *the can*, they began

P 76, l 2574 *hyme mak*, prepare himself, or perhaps simply, make (for the field), go 2582 *helmys last*, *last* clearly means *laced*, see l 2250 2594 *3hit*, although 2599 *dout*, fear 2600 *is assemblit*, made an attack The peculiar use of *assemble* must always be borne in mind 2601 *erd*, earth

P 77, l 2612 *found till gwyans*, go to Gwyans 2614 *til esquyris ther sewyt*, after Esquyris they followed 2619 *one to the melle socht*, made their way to the *mêlée* 2627 *don bore*, borne down 2630 Fifty thousand It would appear that Galiot had 40,000, of whom 10,000 were held *in reserve*, so that in l 2632 only 30,000 are mentioned See l 2569, 2647

P 78, l 2646 *ten*, sorrow, vexation 2656 *resauf*, receive 2663 *at thar come*, at their coming, *led*, put down 2670 *bidng one the bent*, abide on the grassy plain

P 79, l 2679 "That, despite their efforts, they must needs retire" 2684 *stud aw*, stood in awe, see note to l 1506 2693, 4 These lines do not rime But we should certainly read *felde*, *erde* having slipped in from confusion with l 2691 The knight of Galloway goes to the *field*, i e joins battle

P 80, l 2712 *On ayar half*, on either side The MS omits *to*
 2713 *of*, off 2714 *nouss*, nose 2731 *Bot nocht forth*, But not
 on that account

P 81, l 2754 *harmys*, loss 2761 *aucht to ses*, ought to
 cease 2765 *at*, that 2768 *my lef*, my leave, permission 2770
in to cage, in prison

P 82, l 2802 *commandit*, commended

P 83, l 2819 *one athir half*, on either side 2820 *rown*, run
 2821 *howyns*, an ungrammatical form, perhaps *howyng* is meant
 2827 *one hycht*, on height, i e aloud 2829 *sterith*, stirreth
 2833 "The lady of Melyhalt made (her way) to him, and im-
 mediately caused his couch to be placed before a window" Mr
 Stevenson reads,

"Of Melyhalt the lady to hyme maid

Incontinent his couche, and gart he¹ had," etc

i e "The lady immediately made his bed for him," etc 2841 *wen*
cust, vanquished After this word we should perhaps insert "at," as
 in l 3336

P 84, ll 2877-2880 These lines were printed by me for the first
 time, four lines having been here again omitted by Mr Stevenson
 2880 *but weyne*, without doubt 2884 *to led and stere* to lead and
 direct

P 85, l 2893 *Endlong*, along 2894 *weryne*, were 2913 *let*,
 hinder

P 86, l 2925 *dulay*, delay, as in several other places 2938
fek, effect 2944 *zude*, went 2947 *faw*, welfare

P 87, l 2964 *Whill*, until 2970 *ho*, stop, pause 2971 *ver-*
ying In affray, were in terror 2972 *rovm*, room 2978 *socht*,
 made his way 2984 *disponit*, intends, but we must insert "not,"
 to complete the sense and the metre

P 88, l 2998 *eschevit* (used passively), is achieved 3003 *o*
knycht, a single knight 3005 *tars*, takes 3006 *fays*, foes 3013
onys or the nycht, once ere the night 3015 *that zhe have gult to*
mend, to amend that in which ye have trespassed

P 89, l 3052 *Do at I may*, Do that which I can

P 90, l 3065 This line is printed by Mr Stevenson,

"Curag can [] encreasing in¹ his hart",

but it is not clear that a word is wanting, for the metre is as com-
 plete as in many other lines, whilst, as regards the sense, "the
 knycht" is probably a nominative without a verb, and l 3065 means,
 "Courage did increase in his heart" Or the reader may, if he
 pleases, insert "fele" Compare l 3058 3066 *lap*, leaped 3079
 Observe the omission of the word "neither" in this line 3080
persit, pierced 3086 *onam*, anon A'S *on-an*

¹ But the MS has "be," also "melyhat" instead of "Melyhalt"

² MS has "to"

P 91, l 3093 *In samyne will*, with like intent 3100 *bet ax-ampel*, better example 3104 *bot*, unless, *me fall*, befall me 3108 *one vthur*, another 3120 *send*, sent 3121 *lewit one*, left one 3122 *but mercy*, without mercy

P 92, l 3134 *deliuer besynes*, cleve! readiness 3136 *aray*, livery 3140 *Ee*, eye 3146 *the morow neu*, the early morning 3160 *deith*, dead 3162 *Suppos*, although

P 93, l 3178 *Nor*, we now use *but* 3184 *ward*, see Glossary *tho*, then

P 94, l 3200 *relewt*, relieved 3201 *diuerss placis sere*, as *sere* = *diuerss*, one of these words is redundant So in l 3266 3207 *ewil awysut*, ill advised 3217 "And if it so happen, that they be discomfited"

P 95, l 3240 *leuch*, laughed, *sarues*, service 3246 *al haill*, all whole 3248 *r thousand mo*, ten thousand, and more 3259 *aband*, delay 3263 *aucht*, eight 3265 *petus for til hei*, piteous to hear

P 96, l 3297 *dreuch*, drew 3299 *fellit*, fallen 3304 *le-ying*, leave

P 97, l 3307 *sest*, ceased 3321 *askit at*, asked of 3331 *Wencussuth*, vanquisheth 3340 *in to one*, continually, which is sometimes the sense of A S *on an*

P 98, l 3353 *to jillyng*, to fulfil 3357 *soght*, came on, see Glossary 3359 *Ne war*, etc, "Had it not been that they were, individually, the better men" 3364 *ralef*, relieve 3368 *felluth*, feclcth

P 99, l 3384 *vs slyng*, wrestling, *i e* entangled with, a strong expression! 3385 *as alzeing*, assail 3390 *rowmyth*, roometh, emptieth 3403 *deparitit*, parted 3404 *dout*, fear

P 100, l 3412 *left*, failed 3423 *The lord*, *i e* Galiot, as I suppose, Mr Stevenson has, "The Lord" 3430 *stere*, to stir, move, come

P 101, l 3450 *pretendit*, endeavour 3457 *occupye*, employ 3461 *For one hour*, etc, "On account of suffering distress for one hour" 3470 *the well less*, much less, see l 1791 3471 *berd*, beard 3473 *o noysse*, one voice 3475 *eschef froine yhow*, not, *win* from you, but, *withd: aw* himself from you See Glossary

P 102, l 3481 *wend thar var no mo*, thought they were no more 3487. *And sich enconter*, and such encounter These three words are written at the bottom of the page as a catchword The rest of the MS is wanting

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[As many of the words occurring in "Lancelot" are well explained either in Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary or in Roquefort's "Glossaire de la langue Romane," I have frequently referred to these works by means of the letters J and R. Other abbreviations, as ON for Old Norse, Goth for Meeso Gothic, Su-G for Sino-Gothic, etc., will be readily understood. Ch has also been used as an abbreviation for Chaucer. The various French, Danish, German, and other words referred to in the Glossary are merely added by way of illustration, to indicate in what direction a word may be most easily traced up. To ensure accuracy as far as possible, I have verified every foreign word by the aid of dictionaries, referring for Gothic words to my own Glossary, edited for the Philological Society, for Sino-Gothic words, to Thre's Glossarium, for Icelandic words, to Egilsson, and for Old French words, to Roquefort and Burguy. Whatever errors occur below may thus, I hope, be readily traced.]

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Abaid, } delay, tarrying, 1882,
 Abyde, } 2147, 3069, 3308
 A S <i>abidan</i>, J
 Abasit, } abashed, humbled, di-
 Abasyt, } spirited, cast down,
 Abasyt, } 378, 1452, 2664
 Abasit of, dispirited by, 3301
 R <i>abarser</i>
 Abasit of (used passively), were
 dispirited by, 2243
 Abraid, awoke, 1231, (Ch) A S
 <i>on bredan</i>
 Abwsyt (abused), made an ill use
 of, 1207
 Access, a fever, or better, a fit of
 the ague, Lat <i>accessus febris</i>,
 (Wright's Glossary), 31
 Accorde, to agree with, 1526
 Fr <i>s'accorder</i>
 Accordith, is suitable for, becomes,
 1679, 1951, agree therewith,
 605, is useful for, is fit for, 1204</p> | <p>According for, suitable for, 1512
 R <i>accendant</i>
 Adied, terrified, 378, 2664 A S
 <i>on drédan</i>, to dread
 Affek, effect, 382 Cf <i>Fek</i>
 Afferd, afraid, 3472 A S <i>afereð</i>,
 <i>aféran</i>
 Affere, warlike preparation, 985,
 aspect, bearing, 3043, 3334,
 3394 See J, who makes it
 of Teutonic origin, but it may
 be no more than the O Fr
 <i>afaire, afaise</i> = state, condition,
 as explained by Burguy
 Affenith, belongs to, suits, 1550
 Affers, is suitable, 1690, 1961
 R <i>aferrer</i>
 Affrait, terrified, from the verb
 <i>Affray</i> (Ch), 2462, 3469 R
 <i>effraer</i>
 Affray, terror, fright, 636, 3454
 Fr <i>effroi</i></p> |
|---|---|

- Affy in till, trust to, rely upon, 499, 1394 R *affier*
- Afyre, on fire, 30, 251, hence, used allegorically, in love, 2436
- Agrewit, } aggrieved, vexed,
Aggrewit, } 1308, 1538, angry,
 } enraged, 2618 R *agrever*
- Ago, gone, 159 A S *of-gan*
- Aire, are, 1732
- Algait, Algat, always, 1996, 1792
Gothic *gatuð*, a street, way
- Al magre thine, in spite of thee, 115 An expression compounded of A S *al*, wholly, *maugre* (Fr *mal gre*), ill-will, and *thine* (A S *thin*, the gen case of *thú*, thou)
- Al out, altogether, 1676, 1791, etc
Alowit, approved, 1754 Fr *al louer*
- Als, (1) as, (2) also
- Amen, } pleasant, 64, 999 Lat
Ameyne, } *amœnus*
- Anarmyt, fully armed, 545, 620, 2219, 2771 See *Enarmyt*
- And, if, 1024, 1591, and if (= an if), if, 2376
- Anerly, only, 1476, 1696 A S *dén lic*
- Anoit, } annoyed, vexed, 351,
Anoyt, } 2244
- Anoyt, annoyeth, 1407
- Anterous, (for Aunterous, the shortened form of *Aventurous*), adventurous, 2618 Fr *aventure*
- Aparait, apparelled, 338
- Aperans, an appearance, a vision, 364 So also *Apperans*, 1284
- Apone, upon, 765, etc
- Appetit, desire, 2722 Ch has *appetite* as a verb, to desire
- Aqwynt, acquainted, 1295 Buins uses *acquient*
- Aras, to pluck out, 240 Fr *ar-racher*
- Arad, disordered, afflicted, 3270
- See *Araye* in Halliwell The examples there given shew that to *araye* sometimes actually signifies to *disorder*
- Arest, stop, delay, 678, 3072, 3308 Fr *arret*
- Arly, early, 4, 384, 975 A S *arlice*
- Artillery, implements of warfare, 2538 See R *artillerie* Compare 1 Samuel, xx 40
- Assay, (1) assault, trial, 11, 35, 112, 712, attack, 537, 2662
As a verb, to assault, attack, assail, 570, 1044 Fr *assaillir*
(2) to essay, attempt, 2936, to test, 478, 982 Fr *essayer*
- Assaid, } assaulted, 1224, 2641
Assayt, }
- Assall, assault, attack, 842 We should perhaps read "assail," as in l 855
- Assalzeing, assail (3 *pers plural*), 3385
- Assemblay, an assembling of knights for a combat, a tournament, 267
- Assemble, a hostile meeting, combat, battle, 978, 3336 See J
- Assemblyng, encountering, 2588
- Assemblyng on, attacking, 2956
- Assey, to test, 478 See *Assay*
- Astart, to start away from, hence to escape from, avoid, 228, 3296 Ch has *asterte*
- At, that, 1019, etc Compare Dan *at*, O N *at*
- Atour, at over, i e across, 841, 849, 873, in excess, in addition, besides, 1775
- Ather, either, 2629, 2819, 3264 A S *dégther*
- Atte, at the, 627, 1055
- Aucht, eight, 3263 Compare Ger *acht*
- Auentur, adventure, 601
- Auer, ever, 273, etc

- Auerding to, belonging to (?), 345
 The sense seems to point to the
 A S *and weardun*, to be pre-
 sent, Goth *and waurths*, pre-
 sent
- Aventur, Auentoure, adventure,
 80, 222
- Aw, owe, deserve, the present
 tense of the verb of which *ought*
 is the past tense, 3447 A S
ah, dhte
- Awalk, awake, 1049 Goth *wahan*
 The form *awalk* occurs in Dun-
 bar,
 "Awalk, luvans, out of your slomer
 ing"
 (The Thistle and the Rose)
- Awant, boast, 2136 A S a verb,
 1588, and as a reflexive verb,
 2196, 2386 F1 *se vanten* Ch
 has *avante*
- Awin, own, 89 A S *agen*
- Awodith, maketh to depart, 2474
 See *Avord* in Nares' Glossary,
 edited by Halliwell and Wright
- Awow, } vow, 234, 242, 246
 Awoue, } Ch has *avoue*
- Awys, consideration, advisement,
 558
- Awyð the, advise thee, consider,
 1913
- Awyð, } to consider, 424, 429
 Awysing, } Fr *s'aviser*
- Awysment, advisement, considera-
 tion, 360, 680
- Ay, ever, continually, 1135, 1486
 A S *á*
- Ayar (*written instead of* Athar),
 either, 2712
- Ayre, are, 2011
- Ayanis, 744, } against
 Azanis, 1164, 2283, } A S *oncean*
 Azane, Azaine, again, 3253, 380
- Bachleris, bachelors, a name given
 to novices in arms or arts, 1689
 See *bachelor* in R.
- Banais, bannais, 770
- Bartes, 2897 }
 Bartus, 3041 } See *Bertes*
- Barnag, baronge, nobility, 2492
 See *barnur* in R
- Batell, a battalion, division of an
 army, 784, 808, etc
- Be, by A S *be*
- Behest, promise, 2766 A S *behes*
- Behufis, behoves, 579 A S *be*
hofan, often used impersonally
- Behuf, } it behoves, it is neces-
 Behwif, } sary (to do), 944, 2342
 apparently contracted from *be-
 hufis*
- Beleif, in *phr ore* belief = be-
 yond belief, 112
- Bent, a grassy plain (properly a
 coarse grass, in German, *bunne*),
 2670 J
- Bertes, a parapet, a tower, 1007,
 1118, 2815 R *betesche*, from
 Low Latin *brestachia*
- Betak til, to confer upon, 1724
 A S *be-tæcan*, in the sense, to
 assign
- Betakyne, betoken, 2014 A S
be tæcan, in the sense, to shew
- Bewis, boughs, 338 A S *boh*
- Bills, letters, 142 Fr *bullet*
- Blindis, blindness (?), 1903
- Borde, to meet in a hostile manner,
 encounter, 809 We find in R
border, to joust, fight with lances
 Compare Fr *aborder*, and Spen-
 ser's use of *bord* See *honde* in
 Burguy
- Bot, (1) but, (2) without In
 general, *without* is expressed by
but, and the conjunction by
bot, but this distinction is
 occasionally violated
- Bown, ready, prepared, 1036
 O N *búnn*, past part. of *búa*,
 to prepare Su -G *boa*, to pre-
 pare J
- Bretis, fortifications, forts, 874,

- "properly wooden towers or castles *Bretachnae*, castella lignea, quibus castra et oppida muniebantur, Gallis *Bretesque* Du Cange" Jameson See *Bertes*
- Bukis, books, 434, 1862
- Burdish, boards, i e tables, 2198
A S *bórd*, which means—1 a plank, 2 a table, etc
- Bur, bore, 733, 778
- But, without, common in the phrase *but were*, without doubt
- But if, unless, except, 958
- Byhecht, } promised, 1485, 2791
- Bylicht, } A S *be haetan*
- Byknow, notorious for, known to be guilty of, 1627 Compare "I know nothing *by* myself" (1 Cor iv 4) Compare also Dan *bekende*, to make known
- By, near at hand, 1535, 2916
- Cag, } cage, prison, 997, 2770
- Cage, }
- Can, an auxiliary verb, used nearly as we now use *did*
- Careldis, plural of Careld, a merry-making, revel (?), 1318 "*Car-aude*, réjouissance," and "*Can o-ler*, danser, se divertir, mener une vie joyeuse" Roquefort
- Catufis, wretches, 2102 R *caruf*, *captif* Compare Ital *cattivo*
- Chalmer, chamber, 2281, 2308, 2427, 2808 J
- Chare, } chariot, 4, 735 R *cher*
- Cher, }
- Charge, load, 693 Fr *charge*, see *discharge* in the line following (694), meaning to shake off a load
- Chargit, gave attention to, 710, 2454 Fr *se charger de*
- Chen, chain, 2375
- Cher, cai, chariot, 735 See *Chare*
- Chere, cheer, demeanour, 83, 341, 695, sad demeanour, outward grief, 2718 Fr *chère*, compare Ital *ciera*, the face, look "*Wepinge* was hyr moste *chere*" (Le Morte Arthur, l 726)
- Cheß, choose, 1611, 1636, 2368
A S *ceosan*, Ger *kiesen*, Dutch *kieren*
- Clarouns, clarions, 771, 789
- Clepe, to call, 90, 99 A S *clepan*
- Clepit, callest, 93, called, 781
- Clepith, is called, 1919
- Clergy, science, knowledge, 504, 511, 2041 R *clergie*
- Closine, closed, concluded, 316
- Closith, enclosed, shut up, 427
- Cold, called, 753, 1579
- Commandit, commended, 2802
- Comprochit, approached, 2472, 2509
- Conpilour, compiler, poet, 319
- Conquest, conquered, 574, Fyrst-conquest, first conquered, 1545, etc
- Conseruyt, preserved, 332
- Conten (used as a reflective verb), to demean oneself valorously, to maintain one's ground, 823, 1107, 1130 See R "*contenement*, contenance, conduite, maintien, posture"
- Contentit hymie, behaved himself, 3219, Contentit them, 2634
- Contenyt, endured, 3190
- Contietoun, contrition, 1415, 1426
- Contynans, demeanour, 1693, 1747
- Counter, encounter, attack, charge, 3239
- Couth, could, 793 A S *cunnan*, past tense, *ic cuðe*
- Cowardy, cowardice, 1023, 3287
- Cownterit, encountered, 2609, 2621 J
- Crownel, coronal, corolla of a flower, 59 J

- Cummyne, } came, 807, 907
 Comyne, }
 Cumyne, 650, 1136, } come (past
 Cumyng, 447, } part)
 Cummyng, 2498, }
 Cunyng, knowledge, 1455
 Cusynace, 1270, }
 Cusynece, 2802, } kinswoman
 Cusynes, 2287, }
 Cwsynes, 1185, }
 Cwre, care, 98, 266, 643 Lat
cura (N B Though *Cwre* =
cwa, yet *cwa* should be dis-
 tinguished from A S *cearu*)
- Dangei, power to punish, "the
 power of a feudal lord over his
 vassals," (Wright), 444 Also,
 power to injure, 3006 See R
danger
- Dans, (dance), in the phrase
 "wreht dans," evil mode of
 life, 1321 See Chaucer's use
 of *dauunce*, and compare—
 "I sai þow lely how thai lye
 Dongen doun alle in a *dauunce*"
 Lawience Minot, quoted in
 Specimens of Early English,
 by R Morris, p 194
- Dede, 90, } death Dan *dod*
 Ded, 3304, } A S *deað* O N
daði
- Deden, deign, 949 J
 Dedenyt, deigned, 240
 Deid, died, 215
 Deith, dead (past part), 3160
 Delitable, delightful, 1738 R
delitable
- Delhuer, nimble, clever, 3134
 Delhuerly, (cleverly), nimbly,
 lightly, 3089, 3131 R *delivre*
 Demande, demur, 191, 397, 3052,
 3354 See R "*demande*, con-
 tremander, changer, revoquer
 l'ordre donné"
- Depart, to part, 3421 R *depar tir*
 Departit, parted, 3403
- Depaynt, painted, 46, 1703 F1
depeint Ch *depeint*
- Depend me, waste or consume
 (my poweis), 214, possibly
 miswritten for *despend* Cf
Dispendit Depend to, to con-
 cern, appertain to, 466
- Deren, to speak out, tell, 2376
 R *derarmer*
- Dereyne, a plea, 2313, "hath
 o dereyne ydoo," hath appealed
 to trial by combat R *deramier*
- Des, dars, high table, 2762 R
deis, Lat *discus*
- Deut, availed, 18 See note
- Dewith, } deafen, 92, 94 "Su-
 Dewith, } G *deofwa*, Icel
deyfa," J Compare Dan
dove Burns has *deare*
- Dewod the, devoid thyself, 1022
 Deuoydit was = departed, 1031
 Compare *Awoðith*
- Dewyð, to tell, narrate, 373
- Discharg, to put aside one's lia-
 bility, 163, 1665
- Disef, lack of ease, misery, 707
- Disoint (Disoint?), disjoined, out
 of joint, hence uncertain, haz-
 ardous, 2907 "Disjoint, A dif-
 ficult situation" Halliwell
- Dispendit, spent, 1808 R *des-
 pendie*
- Dispens, expenditure, 1746 F1
dépense
- Dispolzeith, despoileth, 1879
- Dispone, to dispose, provide, or,
 as a reflexive verb, to be dis-
 posed to do, to intend, 54, 446,
 980, 1590, 2428, 2462
- Disponit, declines (?), but much
 more probably, intends, and we
 must read "disponit not," 2984
- Dout, fear, 2599, 3404, 3438, (as
 a verb), to fear, 740, 1827 Ch
doute R *doubtance*
- Drent, drowned, 1319 A S *dren-
 can*

- Dreß (as a reflective verb), to direct oneself, proceed, go, 1975, 2288, 2486 Lat *dirigere*
- Drywith, drives, "he drywith to the end," i e concludes, 2470
- Duclar, declare, 3022
- Dulay, delay, 681, 788, 2925
- Effere, shew, pomp, 2360 Compare *Afferre*
- Efter, after, 217 A S *after*
- Eld, old age, 3225, 3242 A S *ylde* Gothic *alds*
- Elyk, Eliche, alike, 182, 2452
- Eme, uncle, 2572 A S *éam*
- Empit, emptied, empty, 180 A S *emtran*
- Empleß, to please, 2455 J
- Empriß, worth, honour, 129, 269, 3458, cf Romans of Partenay, 1 2013 Anxiety, oppression, 393 R *empirindre*
- Enarmyt, fully armed, 285, 751, 2499 J
- Endit, indited, 138, indite, 206, inditing, poem (?), 334 If the meaning were, "this ends," the form "endis" would be required, besides which, the rime shews that the *i* is long, cf ll 138, 206
- Endlong, along, 2893 A S *andlang*, Ger *entlang*
- Entent, intention, will, meaning, thoughts, 448, 1451, 1499, 2938 R *entente* Used by Chaucer
- Entermet, to intermeddle with, to have do with, 2914 R *entre metre*
- Enweronyt, environed, 53
- Erde, earth, 1072, 1540, 2601 Compare Ger *erde*
- Erdly, earthly, 498
- Erth, earth, 128 A S *eorð*
- Eschef (1 eschew), to shun, withdraw himself, 3475 R *escheven*, (2 achieve), to accomplish, 2212, 2513 R *eschavin* Eschef deith, to die, 2732
- Eschevit, achieved, 258
- Eschevit, is achieved, 2998
- Eß, 174, } ease
- Eefß, 706, } ease
- Essenzeis (ensigns), warcnes, 3349, J See also R *enseigne*
- Euermilkon, every one, 1039, etc
- Exasy, extasy, 76 (Possibly miswritten)
- Exortuth, beseecheth, 3026
- Extend, attain, 3281
- Failzeis, fail, (3 pers plu indicative), 1151
- Fairhed (fairhood), beauty, 577 In A S *færgernes*, but in Dan *forhed*
- Fall, to happen, befall, 493, 2139 A S *feallan*, Dan *falde*
- Fallyng, fallen, 1217, 1322
- Falowschip, used as we now use company, 1105, 2687, etc
- Falzeing, failing, 1499
- Falzet, Falzheit, failed, 1460, 1469, 1498, 1503
- Farhed, beauty, 2440 See *Fairhed*
- Fayndit (feigned), dissembled, 2397
- Fays, foes, 3006 A S *fāh*
- Fechtiand, fighting, 2691, 3127, 3407 Ger *fechten*
- Fechterns, fighters, 686
- Feill, knowledge, skill, 2854 J A S *fēlan*
- Fek (effect), sum, amount, result, drift, 2938 Fr *effet*
- Fell, to feel, 820, 2131
- Fellth, feeleth, 3368
- Fell, many, als fell, as many, 768 A S *fēala*, Gothic *filu*
- Fell, horrible, 260 A S *fell*, cruel, fierce
- Ferde, fourth, 815, 973, 2285 Compare Dan *fjerde*

- Ferleht, wondered, 3117 A S
fēr lu, sudden, fearful Burns
 has *ferlie*
 Fet, fetched, 433, 1154 A S *fec-*
can, past tense, *ic feakte*
 Fongith, catcheth, seizeth, 1922
 A S *fangan*, Goth *fahan*
 Fortare, to fare amiss, to perish,
 1348 A S *for faran*
 Forlorn, lost, 3305 A S *for-*
loren, cf Goth *fralusan*
 For quhy, see *For-why*
 For thi, } (there fore), on that ac-
 For thy, } count, 332, 2261, 2731
 A S *forthý*, where *thý* (Gothic
thē) is the instrumental case of
se, that
 For wrocht (for wrought), over-
 worked, wearied out, 888 A S
forwyrcean
 For why, 798, 925, 2209, } for
 For quhy, 2171, 2342, 2290, } the
 reason that, because that
 Found, to advance, go, 2612 J
 A S *fundian*, to try to find, go
 forward
 Franchis, generosity, 230 R *fran-*
chise
 Fremmytneß, strangeness, aliena-
 tion, 1508 A S *fremdnes*
 Froit, enjoyment, 1644, fruit,
 2088, 2109 R *fruit*
 Frome, from the time that, 17,
 1432 Goth *frums*, a beginning
 Fruschit, broken, dashed in pieces,
 1201 R *frous*, broken, from
 the verb *froer*
 Fundyne, 497, } found (past
 Fundyng, 465, } part)
 Fyne, faithful, true, 519 See R
 "fine, fidele," and "fine, for"
 Fyne, end, 1388, 2081 Fr *fin*
 Ganth, is suitable for, 991 Icel
gegna J Compare Dan *gavne*
 Ganyth, it, it profits, *used imper-*
sonally, 121 R *gaagner*
 Gare, to cause, 910, 2416 Dan
gore, Icel *göra*
 Gart, caused, 267, 2777
 Gentillicß, 917, 1847 See *Gen-*
tiuce
 Gentrice, 1307, 2757, } courtesy,
 Gentrif, 2790 } nobleness
 R *gentilesse*
 Gere, gear, equipment, armour,
 2777 A S *gearua*
 Geit, 384 See *Gart*
 Giffis, give thou, (ht give ye, the
 plural being used in addressing
 the king), 463 A S *gyfan*
 Gifyne, given, 1752
 Gilt, offended, done wrong, 699,
 3015 A S *gyltan*
 Grehhundis, greyhounds, 533,
 537 "O N *grey*, *grey hundr*,
 a bitch" Wedgwood
 Goweine the, conduct thyself,
 1598
 Grawis, groves, 2481 Ch *greves*
 Gyrsß, grass, 10 A S *gers*
 Gyß, guise, fashion, custom, 545
 Ch *gise*
 Haade, had, 2150
 Habariowne, habergeon, 2889
 From *haubergeon*, the French
 form of Ger *halsberge* See
Hawbrek
 Habimounne, habergeon, 3380
 Heill, whole, 3246 A S *hæl*
 Haknay, an ambling horse for a
 lady, 1730 R *haquenee*
 Half, in the phrase on arthuris
half, i e on Arthur's side, 883
 Compare use of Germ *halb*
 Halk, a hawk, 1736, 2482 A S
hafoc
 Hall, }
 Hoil, } various spellings of Haill,
 Holl, } whole
 Hail, }
 Hals, neck, 1054 A S *hals*
 Goth. *hals*



- Hant, to exercise, practise, 2191
 Fr *hanter*, lit to frequent
 Hardement, 801, 2669, } hand
 Hardyment, 900, 3362, } hood,
 boldness R *hardement*
 Harrold, herald, 1047
 Hate, hot, 2552
 Havith, hath, 1940, have, 3404
 Hawbrek, 1070, 1200, } haubeik,
 Hawbryk, 3112, } neck de-
 fence, Ger *hals berge*, armour
 for the neck
 Hawnt, to use, 3418 See *Hant*
 Hawntis, exercise, 2772
 He, high, 1969, 2552 A S
 hāh
 Hecht, hight, is called, 2140, was
 called, 2290
 Hecht, to promise, 3101, promised
 (*past part*), 1142 A S *hatan*
 Hedis, heads, 538, 869
 Hewy, 442, } heavy A S *hefig*
 Heuy, 459, }
 Hie, 550, } high See *He*
 Hye, 297, }
 Hienes, highness, 126
 Ho, pause, stop, cessation, 2970
 According to J radically the
 same with the verb *Houe*, or
 How (see *Hout*) The Dutch,
 however, use *hou*, hold ! from
 houden, to hold
 Holl, whole, 106, 745
 Hore, hair, 365
 "Holze were his yzen and vnder
 campe hoies"
 (Early English Alliterative
 Poems, ed Morris See Poem
 B 1 1695) The meaning of
 the line quoted is, "Hollow
 were his eyes, and under bent
 hairs"
 Hot, hight, was called, 754, 806,
 is called, 1950 A S *hátan*
 (neuter)
 Hout, delayed, tarried, halted,
 996 "W *hofian hofio*, to
 fluctuate, hover, suspend,"
 Morris
 Hovith, stays, halts, 2829
 Howit, halted, 2814, 2842
 Howyns, halts, tarries, 2821 Pro-
 bably miswritten for "howyng"
 Hufyng, halting, delaying, 1046
 Hundyre, a hundred, 756, 1554

 I, in, 332 Dan *i*, Icel *i*
 Iclosit, y-closed, i e enclosed,
 shut in, 53
 If, to give, 554 In lines 1718-
 1910 the word occurs repeat-
 edly in several forms, as *iffis*,
 iffith, giveth, *iffis*, give ye (put
 for give thou), *ifyne*, given,
 etc
 Ifyne, to give, 3454
 Iftis, gifts, 1741 In the line
 preceding we have *giftis*
 Ilk, the ilk (= thilk) that, 629,
 1601 Literally, the ilk = the
 same A S *ylc* See 1367
 Ilk, each, 2211, etc A S *æl*
 Illumynare, luminary, 3
 Incontinent, } immediately, 253,
 Incontynent, } 1215, 2647, 2834
 Still used in French
 In to contynent (= Incontinent),
 3020
 In to, used for "in," *passim*
 Iornaye, journey, 680
 Irk, to become slothful, grow
 weary, tire, 2709 A S *ean gian*
 Iuperty, combat, 2547 Fr *jou*
 parti, a thing left undecided,
 hence the meanings, 1 strife,
 conflict, 2 jeopardy, as in Ch
 See J, and Tyrwhitt's note to
 C T 16211
 Iwond, 245, } wounded We
 Iwondit, 226, } find in A S
 both *wínd* and *wúnded*
 I-wyð, certainly, of a surety,
 1709, 1925, 1938 A S *gewis*,
 Ger *gewiss* Often wrongly in-

- terpreted to mean, *I know* See *Wit*
- Kend, known, 548, 906
- Laif, the remainder (lit what is left), 1802, 3472 A S *laf*
Burns has "the *lave*"
- Lametable, lamentable, 3265 The omission of the *n* occurs again in l 2718, where we have *lemytable*
- Larges, liberality, 608, 1681, 1750
Fr *largesse*
- Larg, prodigal, profuse, 2434
- Lat, impediment, 958 A S *létan*, means (1) to suffer, (2) to hinder
- Lat, to let, permit (used as an auxiliary verb), 803
- Latith, preventeth, 1927
- Law rare, a laurel, 82 Ch *lawen*
- Learis, lars, 493
- Leð, put down, beat down, depressed, overpowered, 2663
It is the past tense of A S *leogan*, to lay, to cause to submit, to kill
- Lef, to live, 564, 3230
- Leful, lawful, 1427
- Legis, heges, subjects, 1957 R
lige, Lat *ligatus*
- Leich, leech, physician, 106 A S *lêce*, Dan *læge* See 520, 2056
- Leif, to live, 952, 1392 A S *lybban*, Goth *liban*
- Leir, to learn, 1993 Comp D *leeren*
- Lest, to list, to please, 555, 621 A S *lystan*
- Lest, to last out against, sustain, 811 A S *lêstan*
- Lest, least, 1628
- Let, hindrance, 2495
- Leuch, laughed, 3240 A S *hlîhan*, past tense *ic hlôh*
- Lewis, liveth, 1209
- Lewith, left, deserted, 1854
- Liging, 376 The sense requires *lay*, i e the 3rd p s pt t m dic, but properly the word is the present participle, *lying*
- Longith, belongeth, 738, 1921, 2429, 2778 Compare Dan *lange*, to reach
- Longith, belonged, 3242
- Longyne, belonging, 433
- Lorn, lost, 2092, destroyed, 2740
See *For lorn*
- Loß, praise, 1777 Lat *laus*
Ch has *losed*, praised
- Low, } (1) law, 1602, 1628, 1636,
Lowe, } etc (2) love, 29, 1620
It is sometimes hard to say which is meant Compare Dan *lov*, law, A S *luf*, love
- Luges, tents, 874, 881, 2500, 2680 Fr *loge*, *logis*, Ger *laube*, a bowcl, from *laub*, foliage, Gothic *lauß*, a leaf
- Lugyne, a lodging, tent, 891
- Lyt, a little, 1233 At lyte, in little, used as an expletive, 143
- Ma, short form of Make, 953
- Maad, made, 697
- Magre of, in spite of, 500, 960, 2679, 2702, 2711 Sometimes "magre" is found without "of" Fr *mal gré*
- Matalent, } displeasure, anger,
Matelent, } 2169, 2660 In both cases Mr Stevenson wrongly has *maltalent* R *maltalent*, *mautalent*
- Mayne, 1026 See *Men*
- Medyre, mediator (?), 1624 I am not at all sure of this word, but we find in R many strange forms of "mediator," such as *méener*, *méensneves*, etc In the Supplement to the "Dictionnaire de l'Académie" we find *mediavre*, qui occupe le milieu, from Low Lat *mediarius* N B

- In the MS the "d" is indistinct See *mediane* in Ducange
- Meit, to dream, 363 A S *mætan*
- Mekill, much, 876, 1236 Mokil, 1265
- Melle, contest, battle, 2619 Fr *melee*, J
- Memoratyve, mindful, bearing in remembrance, 1430 Fr *memoratif*
- Men, mean, way, "be only men" = by any means, 2366, so, too, "be only mayne," 1026 Fr *moyen*
- Men, to tell, declare, 510 A S *mænan*
- Menye, a company, multitude (without special reference to number), whence "a few menye," a small company, 751 Apparently from A S *menig*, Ger *menge*, but it may have nothing to do with the modern word *many*, and is more probably from the O F *maisonnée*, a household
- Met, dreamt, 440 See *Meit*
- Meyne, 41 See *Men*
- Misgvit, misguided, 1663 R *guier*
- Mo, more, 3187, etc A S *ma*
- Mon, man, 96
- Moneth, month, 569 A S *mónað*, Goth *menoth*
- Morow, morning, 1, 30, 64, 341 Goth *maurguns*
- Mot, must, 195 A S *u mót*
- Mys, a fault, 1888, 1937, 3230 A S *mis* Do o myð, to commit a fault, 1926
- Mysour, measure, 1830
- Myster, need, 1877, 2322 Ch *mistere*, R *mester*, Lat *ministerium* Cf Ital *mestiere*
- Nat, naught, 703 Shortened from A S *ná wuht*, i e *no what*
- Nece, nephew, 2200, 2245, 2720 R *niez*
- Nedlyngis, of necessity, 2337, J A S *neadinga*
- Nemmyt, considered, estimated, 649, 2852 A S *nemnan*, to name, call
- Ner, near, 441
- Neulyngis, newly, again, 36, J A S *nwe lwe* (?)
- Newis, for Nevis, nieves, fists, 1222 Icel *hnefi* Dan *næve* Burns has *nieve*, Shakspeare *neuf*
- Noght, not, 1182
- Nois, nose, 2714 R *néis*
- Nome, name, 226, 320, 1546, 3341 Fr *nomme*
- Nome, took, 591, 1048 A S *niman*, past tense, i e *nám*
- Northest, north east, 677
- Not (shortened from Ne wot), know not, 522, 3144 A S *nat*, from *nitan* = *ne witan*
- Not, naught, 720 See *Nat*
- Noyth, annoyeth, 904 Fr *nuire* Lat *nocere*
- Noyt, annoyed, offended, 471
- Nys, } (nice), foolish, 127, 1946
- Nyce, } Fr *nais*
- O, a, an, *passum*, one, a single, 2998, 3003, 3393, etc
- Obeisand, obedient, 641
- Obeð, obey, 2134
- Oblist, obliged, 969
- Occupyte, to use, employ, 3457, to dwell, 75 Lat *occupare*
- Of, with, 66
- Of-syð, oft times, 2304, 2594, 2789, 2885, 2929 See *Syð*
- On, and, 519 Possibly a mistake
- One, on, often used for In, One to = unto
- Onan, } anon, 158, 1466, 2602,
- Onone, } etc The form "onan,"
- Onon, } 1 3086, suggests the

- derivation of *anon*, viz from
A S *on an*, in one, hence,
forthwith, immediately
- Onys, once, at some time or
other, 3013, at onys, at once,
3187
- Opin, 1286, } open
Opine, 13, }
- Or, ere, before, 77, 1887, 2545
A S *ér*
- Ordand, to set in array, 784, to
prepare, procure, 1713 R
ordener, Lat *ordinare*
- Ordan, to provide, 2416, 2777
- Ordynat, ordained, 490 See 1
507
- Orest (=Arest), to arrest, stop,
3186
- Oment, east, 5
- Oucht, it, it is the duty of (= Lat
debet), 2995 Strictly, we
should here have had "it
owes" (*debet*), not "it ought"
(*debut*) See *Aw*
- Ourfret, over adorned, decked out,
71, 2480 A S *frætwian*, to
trim, adorn
- Out throng (= Lat *expressit*), ex-
pressed, uttered, 65 A S *út*,
out, and *þringan*, to press
- Owtrag, outrage, 3454 R *out-
rage*, Ital *oltraggio*, from Lat
ultra The MS has *outray*,
probably owing to confusion
with *affray* in the same line
We find "owtrag" in l 2578
- Oyf, to use, 1701, J
- Paid, pleased, ill paid, displeased,
908 Low Lat *paganē*, to pay,
satisfy
- Palzonis, pavilions, tents, 734,
plural of
- Palzonne, a pavilion, a tent, 1305
It gives *pavillon*, a tent, cf
Low Lat *papilio*, a tent
- Pan, pain, 1273
- Pas hyme, to pace, go, 362
- Paß, to go, 1213
- Pasing, pacing, departing, 371,
surpassing, 303, 346, 689, etc
- Pens, to think of, 1431 Fr
penser
- Planly, at once, 3319 J gives
"Playn, out of hand, like *fr
de plain*" In the same line
"of" = off
- Plant, plaint, complaint, 137 Fr
plainte
- Plesance, Plesans, pleasure, 941,
1939
- Plessith, pleases, 68
- Possede, to possess, 578 Fr
posseder
- Poware, a power, a strong band of
men, 2647 We now say *force*
- Powert, poverty, 1330, 1744
- Pref, to prove, 2229, 3476
- Piekand, picking, spurring, 3089
See the very first l of Spenser's
Faerie Queene
- Prekyne, 2890, showy (?) gaudy (?)
J gives "Preek, to be spruce,
to crest, as 'A bit *preekin* bodie,'
one attached to dress, to *prich*,
to dress oneself" Compare D
prychen
- Pretend, to attempt, aspire to,
3282, 3465 Fr *prétendre*
So, too, in lines 559, 583
- Pretendit, endeavour, attempt,
3442
- Process, narration, 316 Wright
gives "Proces, a story or rela-
tion, a process" The writer is
referring to his prologue or in-
troduction
- Promyt, to promise, 965
- Propont, proposed, 361, 445
- Pupil, people, 285
- Puple, people, 1367, 1498, 1520
- Pur, 1648, }
- Pure, 1697, } poor
- Pwre, 1655, }

- Quh- Words beginning thus begin in modern English with Wh
 Thus, Quhen = when, etc
 Quhilk (whilk), which, 184 A S *hwylc* = Lat *qualis* rather than *qui*
 Quhill, while, *used as a noun*, 1229, 1293 A S *hwil*, a period of time
 Quhill, until, 24, 198 See *Whill*
 Quhy, the quhy = the why, the reason, 123, 1497
 Qwhelis, wheels, 736 A S *hwel*
 Qwheyar, whether, 1187
 Quhois, } whose, 171, 1297
 Qwhois, }
 Rachis, hounds, 531 Su G *racka*, a bitch, which from the v *racka*, to race, course Perhaps connected with *brach*
 Radur, fear, 1489, J From Su G *rædd*, fearful, Dan *ræd*
 Raddour, 2133, }
 Radour, 1835, 3465, } fear
 Raid, rode, 3070, 3260, etc
 Ralef, relieve, 3364
 Ramed, remedy, 117 See *Remed*
 Randoune, in, 2542 The corresponding line (l 739) suggests that in *Randoune* = *al about*, i.e. in a circuit But if we translate it by "in haste," or "in great force," we keep nearer to the true etymology In Ogilvie's Imperial Dictionary, s.v. Random, we find the Noī Fr *randonnée* explained to mean the "sweeping circuit made by a wounded and frightened animal," but the true meaning of *randonnée* is certainly *force*, *impetuosity*, see R, Cotgrave, etc In Danish, *rand* is a surrounding edge or margin, while in Dutch we find *rondom* round about
 Raquer, requie, 2409
 Raf, race, swift course, 3088 A S *raes* Compare Eng *mill-race*, and D *ra*
 Recidens, delay, 2359 R *residiet*, to defer
 Recist, resist, 566, 660, 2578
 Recounteint, met (in a hostile manner), encountered, 2958 Fr *rencontrer*
 Record, witness, testimony, hence value, 388 R *record*
 Recorde, to speak of, mention, hard recorde, heard say, 121, 595
 Recorde, speak out, 454, 481 See R *recorde*
 Recordith, issuitable, belongs, 606
 Recourse, to return, 1798 Lat *recurere*
 Red, to advise, 1027, 1198 A S *rædan*, Goth *riðan*
 Relewit (relieved), lifted up again, rescued, 2617 Fr *reluer* J
 Remede, 89, }
 Remed, 718, } remedy
 Remut, remove, 655
 Report, to narrate, 266, to explain, 294, to state, 320
 Reprefe, reproof, defeat, 764
 Reput, he reputed, i.e. thought, considered, 743
 Resaut, received, 2796
 Resawit, received, kept, 2106 We should have expected to find "reseruit"
 Resonite, resounded, 66
 Resydens, delay 670 See *Recidens*
 Revare, 275, }
 Rewar, 2893, } river
 Rewere, 2812, }
 Reweyll, proud, haughty, 2853 R *revele*, fier, hautain, oiguel leux Compare Lat *rebellare*
 Richwysnes, righteousness, 1406 A S *rihtwises*

- Rigne, 94, 1527, } a kingdom Fr
 Ring, 1468, } *regne* Ch
 Ringe, 1325, } *regne*
 Rignis, kingdoms, 1858
 Rignis, Rignith, reigneth, 1825, 782
 Ringne, a kingdom, 1952
 Rout, a company, a band, 812, 2956, 3403 Rowt, 2600
 Rowmyth, roometh, i.e. makes void, empties, 3390 A S *rúman*
 Rown, run, *past part* 2488, 2820
 Rwn, run, 2545
 Rygnis, kingdoms, 1904
 Ryne, to run, 113 See 2952
 Ryng, to rign, 1409, 2130
- Sa, so, 3322, 3406 Dan *sau*
 Saude, said, 698
 Salust, saluted, 546, 919, 1553, 2749 Ch *saluti*
 Salosing, salutation, 1309
 Sar, sorely, 1660
 Sauch, saw, 817, 1219, 1225 A S *ic sedh*, from *seón*
 Schawin, shewn, 2387
 Schent, disgraced, ruined, 1880 A S *scendan*, Dan *shende*
 Schrewit, accursed, 1945
 Scilla, the name of a bird, also called Cris, 2483
 — "plumis in avem mutata vocatur Cris, et a tonso est hoc nomen adepta capillo"—(Ovid, Met viii 150)
 Screwis, shrews, ill-natured persons, 1053 More often used of males than females in old authors
 Seduls, letters, 142 R *cedule*
 Sege, a seat, 2258 Fr *siege*
 Semble, a warlike assembly, hostile gathering, 988, 2206
 Semblit, assembled, 845 G *sammeln*, from Goth. *sama, samana*
 Semblyng, encountering, 2951 See *Assemble*
- Sen, since, 709, 800, etc Sen at, since that In Piers Plowman we find *syn*
 Septure, sceptic, 666
 Seie, several, various, 594, 731, 746 "Su G *sai*, adv denoting sepuration" J Cf Lat *se*
 Sess, to cease, 14, etc Fr *cesser*
 Set, although
 Sew, to follow up, seek, 2326 R *sui*, Fr *suivre*
 Scw, to follow up, go, proceed, 3145 Scwy, 2614
 Shauyth, shewith, 412
 Sice, such, 2115 Scotch, *sic*
 Snybbyth, snubs, checks, 3387 (Comp D *snob*, a beak, *snebbing*, snappish
 Sobing, sobbing, mourning, 2658
 Socht, } sought to go, and hence,
 Soght, } made his (or then) way, proceeded, went, 2619, 3179, 3357, 3428 Sought one, advanced upon, attacked, 3149, 3311 Sought to, made his way to, 3130 A S *secan*, past tense *ic sichte*, to seek, approach, go towards
 Sor, sorrow, anxiety, 74 A S *soih*, Goth *sauja*
 Sort, lot, fate, 26 Fr *sort*
 Sound, to be consonant with, 149 See Gloss to Tyrwhitt's Chaucer Lat *sonare*
 Soundith, 1811 "So the puple soundith," so the opinion of the people tends
 "As fer as *southeith* into honestee"
 (Chaucer *Monkes Prologue*)
 Soundith, tend, 1943, tends, 149
 Sown, sound, 1035 Fr *son*
 Sownis, sounds, 772, 3436
 Spent, fastened, clasped, 2809 A S *spannan*, to clasp, join
 Comp Dan *spende*, to stretch, span, buckle together

- Spere, } sphere, 6, 170, speris,
Spir, } spheres, circuits, 24
Spere, to inquire, 1170 A S
spuran, to track Cf G
spur
Sperithus, spear's, 810
Spill, to destroy, ruin, 1990
A S *spillan*
Spreit, spirit, 81, 364
Stak, 226 J gives "to the
steeks, *completely*," and this
is the sense here See Jamie-
son s v "Steak" Halliwell
gives *stake*, to block up, also
steck, a stopping place (cf
Shakespeare's *sticking place*,
Macb i vii l 60) In the N
of France it is said of one killed
or severely wounded, *il a eu*
son estoque, he has had his
belly full, from *estiquer*, to
cram, satiate, "stodge" Com
pare Ital *stucco*, cloyed It
has also been suggested that
to the stak may mean to the
stock, i e up to the hilt, very
deeply
Start, started up, leapt, 994,
1094
Stede, stead, place, 218, 1124
A S *stede*
Steir, to stir, 817 A S *stiran*
Stekith, shuts, 1651 Ger *stecken*
Burns has *steek*
Stek, shut, concluded, 316
Stell, steel, 809 Stell commonly
means a stall, or fixed place,
but the form *stell* for *steel*
occurs, e g "Brounstelle was
heuy and also kene" *Arthur*,
l 97
Sterapis, 3056, } stirrups A S
Steropis, 3132, } *stir-ap* or *stige-*
rap, from *stigan*, to mount, and
rap, rope
Stere, ruler, arbiter, 1020, con-
trol, guidance, 1974
Stere, to rule, control, 1344, 2884,
A S *stigrun*
Stere, to stir, move, go, 3430
See *Steir*
Sterith, stirreth, 2829
Sterf, to die, 1028 A S *steorfan*
Sterit, governed, 612 A S *stigran*
Stert, started, 377
Stok, the stake to which a baited
bear is chained, 3386
Stour, conflict, 1108, 2607, 3124
R *estour*
Straucht, stretched out, 3090 A S
streccan, past part *gestreht*
Strekith, stretcheth, i e exciteth
to his full stride, 3082
Subiet, 1799, } subject, sub
Subetis, 1828, } jects
Subietis, 1878, }
Sudandly, Sodandly, suddenly,
1009, 1876
Suet, sweet, 331
Suppris, (surprise), overwhelming
power, 691, 860, 2651, oppres-
sion, 1352 Fr *surprendre*, to
catch unawares
Supprisit, overwhelmed, 1237,
1282, overpowered, 2705,
3208 Supprisit ded, suddenly
killed, 3125
Surryzenis, surgeons, 2726
Suth, sooth, true, 110 A S *sōð*
Suthfastnes, truth, 1183. A S
sōðfastnes
Sutly, soothly, truly, 963
Swelf, a gulf such as is in the
centre of a whirlpool, a vortex,
1318, J A S *swelgan*, to swal-
low up
Sweuen, a dream, 440 A S *swefn*
Swth, sooth, true, 2753 See
Suth
Syne, 2026, }
Synne, 2029, } sin
Syne, afterwards, next J 45,
794, etc
Syð, times, 3054 A S *sōð*

- Tms, 1095, 3005, } takes Abbie-
 faus, 1141 } vited, as
 "ma" is from "make" See *Ma*
 Tane, taken, 264
 Ten, grief, vexation, 2646, 3237
 A S teonan, to vex
 Tennandis, tenants, vassals hold-
 ing fiefs, 1729 *R tenancier*
 Than, then, 3111
 The, (1) they, (2) thee, (3) thy
 Thelke, that, 709 See l 629,
 where *the 7th* occurs, and see
 Ilh
 Thur, these, those, 2734, 2745,
 2911, 3110, etc
 Ththingis, tidings, 2279 *A S*
 tidan, to happen
 Tho, then, 545, 2221, them, 2368
 Thoore, there, 628 Thore, 1102
 Thrd, third, 370, 2347, 2401
 A S þridda
 Throng, closely pressed, crowded,
 3366 *A S þrungan*
 Til, to, til have, to have, 706
 Tint, lost, 1384 See *Tyne*
 Tithandis, tidings, 2310
 Tithingis, tidings, 902, 2336
 To, too, besides, 3045
 Togidder, together, 254
 To-kerwith, carves or cuts to
 pieces, al to-kerwith, cuts all
 to pieces, 868 *A S to ceorþan*
 The prefix *to-* is intensive, and
 forms a part of the verb See
 Judges ix 53 "All to brake
 his skull," i.e. utterly brake,
 sometimes misprinted "all to
 break" (!)
 Ton, taken, 1054, 1071
 Ton, one, the ton, the one, 1822
 The tone = *A S þæt dne*
 To schent, disfigured, 1221 The
 intensive form of the *A S* verb
scendan, to shame, destroy In
 the same line we have *to-hunt*,
 and in the next line *to rent*,
 words modelled on the same
 form We find, e.g., in Spenser,
 the forms *all to rent*, *all to*
bru's'd (See the note on the
 prefix *To-* in the Glossary to
 William of Palerne)
 Tothu, the other, 2536 Thetothr
 = *A S þæt opere*, where *þæt* is
 the neuter gender of the definite
 article Burns has *the tither*
 Toyer (= tother), the other, *y* be-
 ing written for the *A S þ (th)*,
 2571, 2584
 Trust, to trust, to be confident,
 390, 1129, 1149, *J* Trust,
 1659
 Trusting of (trusting), reliance
 upon, or expectation of, 25, *J*
 Translat, 508, } to transfer, i.e.
 Transulat, 2204, } move
 Tratoiy, treachery, 3224 See *R*
 trator
 Trcty, treatise, 145 *Fr traité*
 Trewis, truce, 1568, 2488, 2545
 Tronsione, 239, } a trun-
 Trunseyoune, 2962, } cheon, a
 Trownsciown, 2890, } stump of
 a spear *Fr tronçon*, from
 Lat truncus In the last pas-
 sage it means a sceptre, *baton*
 "One hytte hym vpon the olde wounde
 Wyth A tronchon of an ore, ' (oar)
 (Le Morte Arthur, l 3071)
 Trought, tith, 161
 Tueching, 403, } touching
 Tweching, 386, }
 Tyne, to lose, 1258, 1387 *Icel*
 týna
 Tynth, loseth, 1761
 Tynt, lost, 175, 1384, 1521
 Unwist, unknown, 1140
 Valis, falls, we should read
 "falis," 2475
 Valkyne, to waken, 8 See *Awalk*
 Vall, billow, wave, 1317 *Ger*
 welle, a wave, *quelle*, a spring,

- Icel *vella*, to *well* up, boil Cf also A S *wel*, Du *wiel*, Lan cashire *weele*, an eddy, whirl pool So, too, in Burns —
- "Whyles owre a linn the burnie plays,
As thro the glen it wimpl t,
Whyles round a rocky seaur it stays,
Whyles in a *wiel* it dimpl t"
- Varand, to warrant, protect, 3411
R *warandir*
- Varnit, warned, 622
- Vassolag, a deed of prowess Pas-
sing vassolag, surpassing valour,
257 R has *vasselage*, courage,
valour, valourous deeds, as in-
dicative of the fulfilment of the
duties of a *vassal* We now
speak of rendering *good service*
- Vassolage, valour, 2724
- Veir, were, 818
- Veris, wars, 305 See *Were*
- Veryng, were, 2971 A S *wéron*
- Vicht, a wight, a peison, 10, 55,
67 A S *uht*
- Virslyng, wrestling, struggling,
3384 J gives the forms *war-*
sell, *wersell*
- Visare, wiser, 607
- Viting, to know, 410 A S
witan
- Vncouth, lit *unknown*, hence
little known, rare, valuable,
1734 A S *uncuð*
- Vodis, woods, 1000
- Vombe, womb, bowels, 375
Goth *wamba*
- Vondit, wounded, 700
- Vpwarpith, warped up, i e drawn
up, 63 See Note to this line
It occurs in Gawain Douglas's
prologue to his translation of
the 12th Book of the *Æneid*
Du *opverpen*, from Goth *wat-*
pan, to cast
- Vsyte, used, 1197, 1208
- Vyre, a cross-bow bolt, 1092 R
vire, cf Lat *vertere*
- Wald, would, 419, 470, etc
- Walkin, to waken, wake, 1239
See *Aualh*
- Wapnis, weapons, 241 A S
wæpen, or *wépn*
- Ward, world, 3184 Glose's
Provincial Dictionary gives
Ward = world, and the omis-
sion of the *l* is not uncommon,
see *Genesis and Exodus* (E E
T S), II 32, 1315
- Wassolage, valour, 2708 See
Vassolag
- Wat, know, 512
- Wawasouris, vavasours, 1729 A
Vavasour was a sub vassal, hold-
ing a small fief dependent on a
larger fief, a sort of esquire
R *vavaseur*
- Weil, very Weil long, a very long
time, 79 Comp Ger *wel*,
J
- Wencussith, vanquisheth, 3331,
vanquished, 3337
- Wencust, vanquished, 2841
- Wend, (1) to go, 2191, (2) weened,
thought, 3481
- Wentail, ventaile, a part of the
helmet which opened to admit
air, 1056 R *ventaille*, from
Lat *ventus*
- Were, (1) war Fr *guerre* R
werre, 308, etc (2) doubt, 84,
etc "But were," without doubt
A S *wær*, cautious, *wary* (3)
worse, 1930 Burns has *waur*
- Wering, weary, 58 A S *wérg*
- Werray, very, true, 1262, 2017
- Werroure, warrior, 248
- Weriour, warrior, 663
- Wers, worse, 515
- Weryng, were, 2493
- Wex, to be grieved, be vexed, 156
- Weyn, vain, 382, 524
- Weyne, in *phr* but weyne, with-
out doubt, 2880 A S *wénan*,
to ween, to suppose

- Whill, until, 1136, J Formed
 from A S *hwil*, a period of time
 Wice, advice, counsel, 1909
 Shortened from Awys
 Wichsauf, vouchsafe, 355, 1391
 Wichsauf, *id* 2364
 Wicht, wight, person, 131
 Wicht, strong, nimble, 248 "Su-
 G *wig*," J Sw *wig*
 Wight, with, 918 Possibly mis-
 written
 Wist, knew, 225, 1047 See *Wit*
 Wit, to know, 268 A S *witan*,
 pres *ic wat*, past tense, *u*
wiste
 Wit, knowledge, 2504
 With, by, 723
 Withschaf, vouchsafe, 1458
 With-thy, on this condition, 961
 See *For thy*
 Wnkouth, little known, 146 See
Vncouth
 Wnwommyt, undefiled, 2097
 A S *wam*, *wem*, a spot
 Wnwyst, unknown, secretly, 219,
 269
 Wod (wood), mad, 3334, 3440
 A S *wōd* Goth *wōds*
 Word, mad, 2695 Perhaps we
 should read *woud*
 Wonde, wand, rod, or sceptre of
 justice, 1601, 1891 J
 Wonk, winked, 1058
 Wonne, to dwell, 2046 A S
wunian
 Worschip, honour, 1158, 1164
 A S *weorðscape*
 Wot, know, 192, etc See *Wit*
 Wox, voice, 13 Lat *vox*
 Woyð, voice, 3473
 Wrechtnes, misery, 2102, miser-
 liness, niggardliness, 1795, 1859
 Wy, reason, "to every wy," for
 every reason, on all accounts,
 2356 Compare *Quhy*
 Wycht, strong, nimble, 2592 See
Wicht
 Wynth,getteth,acquieeth, 1832
 Wyre, a cross bow bolt, 3290 See
Wyre
 Wys, vice, 1795 Wysis, 1540
 Y, written for "th" Thus we
 find "oyer" for "other," etc
 The error arose with scribes
 who did not understand either
 the true form or force of the
 old symbol þ
 Yuf, give, 387
 Yald, yield, 553, yielded, 558
 A S *gildan*
 Yclepit, called, 414
 Yef, give, 563
 Yeif, give, 923
 Yer, year, 610 Used instead of
 the plural "years," as in l
 3243
 Yewyne, given, 1500
 Ygrave, buried, 1800 Comp
 Ger *begraben*
 Yhere, ear, 1576
 Yhei, year, 2064 Used instead
 of "years," 3243
 Yhis, yes, 1397
 Yis, yes, 514, this, 160
 Ylys, isles, 2858, 2882
 Ymong, among, 821
 Yneuch, enough, 2135 A S *genog*
 Yolde, yielded (to be), 951, 1088
 Ystatut, appointed, 2529 Fr
statuer
 Ywyð, certainly, 1798, 1942 See
Iwyð
 3eme, to take of, regard, have re-
 spect to, 665 A S *gēman*
 3ere, year, 342
 3erys, years, 23, 1432
 3ewith, giveth, 1772
 3ha, yes, 2843 Ger *ja*
 3he, ye, 921 Observe that, as in
 this line, *ye* (A S *ge*) is the
nominative, and *you* (A S *eow*)
 the *objective* case
 3hed, went, 1486 Ch has *yeðe*

A S <i>ic eóde</i> , past tense of <i>gán</i> ,	2772
to go Goth <i>ik iddja</i> , past	3hud, went, 2696 See 3hed
tense of <i>gaggan</i> , to go	3is, yes, 3406
3her, year, 2064, 2274	3olde, yielded, 291, 380, 951
3hing, young, 2868	A S <i>ic geald</i> , past tense of
3his, yes, 1397	<i>gyldan</i> , to pay, to yield
3houth-hed, youth hood, youth,	3ude, went, 2944 See 3hed

INDEX OF NAMES, ETC

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p> Albanak, 202, 1447
 Alexander, 1837
 Alphest, 57
 Amytans, 1304, 2446
 Angus, 2858
 April, 1
 Arachell, 434
 Ari s, 336
 Arthur (<i>passim</i>)
 Ban, 202, 1447
 Bible, the, 1483
 Brandellus, 3086
 Brandymagus, 2884, 3430
 Camelot, 275, 280, 357, 407
 Cardole, 2153
 Carlisle, 347
 Christ, 2046
 Clamedeus, 2881, 3259
 Dagenet, 278
 Damel, 1365
 Danzelome, 435
 Esquyns, 2591, 2609, etc
 First conquest king, 1064, etc ,
 2568, etc
 Gahers, 3087
 Gaiot (<i>passim</i>)
 Galys Gwyans, 2605, 2613, etc
 Galygantynis, 599
 Galloway, 2690
 Gawane (<i>passim</i>)
 Gwynans or Gwyans See <i>Galys</i>
 Gyonde or Gyande, 302, 551, 637
 Harwy, 2853, 3206, etc
 Herynes (i.e. Hermes), 436
 Hundred knights, king of, 1545,
 4554 </p> | <p> Jhesu, 2046, 2096
 Kay, 254, 355, 3081, etc
 Lady of the Lake, 220, 223
 Lancelot (<i>passim</i>), appears as the
 red knight, 991, etc , as the
 black knight, 2430, etc
 Logris, 2301
 Malcgnis, 806 See <i>Malengynys</i>
 Malengynys, 2873, 3151, 3155 See
 also <i>Hundred knights, king of</i>
 May, 12
 Melyhalt, 283, 895
 Melyhalt, lady of (<i>passim</i>)
 Moses, 436
 Nembrot (i.e. Nimrod), 435
 Nohalt, 255
 Phœbus, 24, 2472, 2486.
 Priapus, 51
 Round Table, 795, 3213
 Saturn, 2474
 Scilla, 2483
 Solomon, 1378
 Sygramors, 3083
 Titan, 335
 Valydone, 3249 See <i>Walydeyne</i>.
 Vanore, 575 See <i>Wanore</i>
 Virgin (Mary), 2049, 2087, etc
 Venus, 309
 Wales, 599, 2153
 Walydeyne, 2879
 Wanore, 230
 Wryne, 2867
 Ydrus, 2851, 3152
 Ywan, 2606, 2618, etc
 Ywons, 2861 </p> |
|--|---|